#### Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 911T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using the SoftBank 911T handset.
- After reading this manual, retain it for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

SoftBank 911T handset is compatible with the 3G system.

#### Caution

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

### What's in the Box

Handset

Battery Pack (TSBAR1)

Battery Cover

AC Charger (TSCS01)

Desktop Cradle (TSEAR1)

USB Cable (TSDAC1)

User Guide

• First Step Guide (Japanese only)

• BeatJam 2007 for 911T Guide Book (Japanese only)

• Utility Software for 911T (CD-ROM)\*1\*2

- \*1 Complimentary sample not available for purchase.
- \*2 Upgrades or updates of included utility software may become available on the SoftBank Website (www.softbank.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of utility applications and download as required.
- For information about optional items, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- MicroSD<sup>TM</sup> memory card is not included in the 911T package. Purchase a microSD<sup>TM</sup> memory card to use memory card functions.
  - In this manual, microSD™ memory card is referred to as "memory card".
  - Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of February, 2007). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.

## **Contents**

About This Manual	xv
Safety Precautions	xvii
Pictograph Descriptions	
Symbol Descriptions	
Limitation of Liability	
General Notes	
Using Your Handset	xxix
Inside Vehicles	xxx
Aboard Aircraft	XXX
Handling Basics	
Functional Limitations	
Mobile Camera	xxxi
Mobile Light & External Light	xxxi
Copyrights	xxxii
Right of Portrait	
Trademarks and Patents	
SAR	

## 1 Getting Started

USIM Card	1-1
About the USIM Card	1-1
Inserting & Removing the USIM Card	1-2
USIM PINs	1-3
PIN	
PIN2	1-3
PIN Lock & PUK Codes	1-3
Handset Parts & Functions	1-4

Handset	1-4
Display Indicators	1-6
Information Prompt	1-8
Opening and Closing the Handset	1-9
Battery & Charger	1-10
Getting Started	1-10
Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack	1-11
Charging with the AC Charger	1-12
Charging with the Desktop Cradle	1-12
Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional)	1-13
Turning Handset Power On/Off	1-14
Retrieving Network Information	1-15
Date & Time	1-15
Accessing Functions from Main Menu	1-16
Main Menu View	1-18
Landscape Index	1-19
Customize Main Menu	1-19
Select Menu Items Using Keypad	1-20
Mini Tool	1-21
Codes	1-22
Security Code	1-22
Center Access Code	1-22
Call Barring Service Code	1-22
Internet Security Code	1-22

## 2 Basic Operations

Naking a Call	2-1
Making International Calls	2-2
Caller ID	2-2

Redialing	2-2	Key Assignment (Standard Mode)	3-2
Answering a Call	2-3	Entering Characters	3-3
When You Cannot Answer Immediately	2-3	Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana	3-3
Placing an Incoming Call on Hold	2-3	Text Conversion Functions	3-9
Recording a Message to Answering Machine	2-4	Using Word Predictions	3-9
Playing Recorded Messages	2-4	Adding a Word to the User Dictionary	3-1
Deleting Recorded Messages	2-4	Editing Text	3-12
Rejecting a Call	2-5	Editing Entered Text	3-12
Engaged Call Operations		Copy/Cut/Paste	3-12
Adjusting Earpiece Volume	2-5	Undo	3-13
Recording Other Party's Voice	2-5	Insert	3-13
Number Memo	2-6	Additional Functions	3-14
Switching to Handsfree Operation	2-6		
Call Log	2-6	4 Phone Book	
Viewing Dialed Numbers	2-6	1 1 110110 200K	
Viewing Received Calls	2-7	Saving to Phone Book	<b>4-</b> 1
Setting Call Log Lock	2-8	Adding a New Entry	4-2
Viewing Call Time	2-8	Setting a Picture	4-2
Viewing Call Costs	2-9	Setting the Ringtone & Other Options	4-3
Setting Cost Limit	2-9	Setting Location Information	4-4
Owner Information	2-10	Setting Other Information	4-4
Viewing Owner Information during a Call	2-10	Adding an Entry from Call Log	4-5
Setting/Canceling Manner Mode		Checking the Number of Phone Book Entries	4-5
Setting/Canceling Offline Mode		Setting Groups	4-5
About Emergency Calls		Group Names and Icons	4-5
		Group Options	4-6
3 Text Entry		Using Phone Book	4-7
J Text Ellidy		Switching Phone Books	4-7
About Text Entry	3-1	Phone Book Search Modes	4-8
Switching Text Entry Modes	3-1	Changing the Order of Phone Book Entries	4-8

Copying/Moving Phone Book Entries	4-9	Sending a Picture	5-4
Editing Phone Book Entries	4-9	Video Call Settings	5-4
Deleting Phone Book Entries	4-10	Setting the Alternative Image	5-4
Owner Information	4-10	Setting Self-view Confirmation	5-4
Adding Information	4-10	Setting the Image Quality	5-4
Using Your Location Information	4-10	Setting Auto Answer for Video Calls	5-4
Using Speed Calling to Make Calls	4-11	Setting Mute	
Setting Phone Book	4-11	Setting the Speaker for Video Calls	5-5
Setting the Default Storage Place		Setting Hold Image	5-6
Prohibiting Use of Phone Book	4-11		
S! Address Book	4-12	6 Digital TV	
Synchronizing Phone Book	4-13	o Digital IV	
Synchronization Settings	4-14	Digital TV	6-1
Checking Synchronization Log	4-15	One Seg Digital TV Broadcasts	6-1
		Precautions	6-1
5 Video Call		Windows	6-2
5 1155 5		Setup & Watching TV	6-3
About Video Calls	5-1	Configuring Channel Settings	6-3
Indicators	5-1	Watching TV	6-4
Making a Video Call	5-1	Using the Program Guide	6-5
Answering a Video Call	5-2	Setting Subtitle and Audio	6-5
Engaged Video Call Operations	5-2	Configuring the Audio Output Destination	6-6
Adjusting the Speaker Volume	5-2	Setting Digital TV Image Quality	6-6
Muting Microphone	5-2	Setting Digital TV Startup Screen	6-6
Switching between the Earpiece & Speaker	5-2	Using the Data Broadcast Mode	6-6
Using Zoom	5-3	Using TV Links	6-7
Switching between the Main Camera and Sub Camera	5-3	Recording and Playing Back a Program	6-7
Switching Screen Display	5-3	Capturing an Image	6-9
Changing the Image Quality	5-3	Configuring Digital TV Settings	6-10
Changing the Alternative Image	5-3	Setting Digital TV Backlight	6-10

Setting the Off-Timer	6-13
7 Camera	
About the Camera	7-1
Precautions	7-1
Display	7-1
Common Operations on Finder Window	7-4
Pictures	7-5
Camera Modes	7-5
Focus Modes for Taking Pictures	7-6
Taking a Picture	7-6
Using Auto Focus Lock	7-7
Taking a Picture for Phone Book Entry	7-7
Functions for Taking Pictures	7-8
Setting Camera Modes	7-8
Setting Focus Mode	7-8
Setting Image Stabilization	7-8
Setting Picture Mode	7-9
Multi Shots	7-9
Frame Setting	7-10
Videos	7-10
Video Modes	7-11
Recording a Video	7-11
Deleting a Video	7-12
Setting Video as a Ringtone Pattern	7-12
Functions for Recording Videos	7-13
Setting Video Modes	7-13

Recording a Video without Sound	7-13
Setting the Video Compression Method	
QR Code	
Scanning a QR Code	
Checking Scanned Data	
Using Location Information Contained in a QR Code	
Camera & Video Settings	
Camera Settings	
Video Settings	
Camera & Video Settings	
Preview Setting	
Previewing a Picture	
Previewing a Video	
3	
Send Functions	
Send Functions	
Sending via Mail	7-21
Sending via Mail Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication	7-21 7-21
Sending via Mail Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication Editing a Picture	7-21 7-21
Sending via Mail	7-21 7-21 7-22
Sending via Mail  Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication  Editing a Picture  Changing the Picture Size  Picture Effects	7-21 7-21 7-22 7-22
Sending via Mail	7-217-217-227-22
Sending via Mail Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication  Editing a Picture Changing the Picture Size Picture Effects Adding a Frame Adding a Stamp	7-217-217-227-237-23
Sending via Mail Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication  Editing a Picture Changing the Picture Size Picture Effects Adding a Frame Adding a Stamp Adding Text	7-217-227-227-227-237-23
Sending via Mail Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication  Editing a Picture Changing the Picture Size Picture Effects Adding a Frame Adding a Stamp Adding Text Applying a Mosaic	
Sending via Mail Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication  Editing a Picture Changing the Picture Size Picture Effects Adding a Frame Adding a Stamp Adding Text Applying a Mosaic Rotating a Picture	7-21 7-21 7-22 7-22 7-22 7-22 7-22 7-22
Sending via Mail Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication  Editing a Picture Changing the Picture Size Picture Effects Adding a Frame Adding a Stamp Adding Text Applying a Mosaic	7-21 7-21 7-22 7-22 7-22 7-22 7-22 7-22

## 8 Media Player

About Media	Player	·8	1

Playback Window	8-1
Playing Music & Videos	8-2
Audio Output	8-3
Setting the Wallpaper Displayed during Music Playback	8-3
Operations during Playback	8-3
Using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset	8-4
Registering a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset	8-5
Using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset	8-6
Using Playlists	8-6
Creating a Playlist	8-6
Playing a Playlist	8-7
Editing a Playlist	8-7
Accessing Recently Played Files	8-8
Downloading Music and Video Files	8-8
Streaming	
Streaming Other Operations & Settings	8-8
3	8-8 8-9
Other Operations & Settings	<b>8-8</b> <b>8-9</b> 8-9
Other Operations & Settings	8-8 8-9 8-9
Other Operations & Settings	8-8 8-9 8-9 8-9
Other Operations & Settings	
Other Operations & Settings  Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist  Adding a Music File Being Played to a Playlist  Switching Play Modes  Using Search Time	8-8 8-9 8-9 8-9 8-10 8-10
Other Operations & Settings  Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist	8-8 8-9 8-9 8-9 8-10 8-10
Other Operations & Settings  Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist	8-8 8-9 8-9 8-9 8-9 8-10 8-10 8-10
Other Operations & Settings  Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist	8-8 8-9 8-9 8-9 8-10 8-10 8-10 8-10
Other Operations & Settings  Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist	8-8 8-9 8-9 8-9 8-10 8-10 8-10 8-10 8-10

## 9 Memory Card

Inserting a Memory Card	9-1
Removing a Memory Card	9-1
Using a Memory Card	9-2
Memory Card Configuration	9-2
Formatting a Memory Card	9-3
Checking Stored Files	9-3
Confirming Memory Card Usage Status	9-3

# 10 Data Folder

Data Folder	10-1
Structure of Data Folder	10-1
Files Storable in Data Folder	10-2
Using Files & Folders	10-3
Opening Files	10-3
Displaying a PC Document	10-8
Changing the View Format of Data Folder	10-9
Displaying the Memory Usage Status	10-9
Displaying the File Properties	10-9
Using Picture Files	10-10
Using Melody, Music/Videos/Flash® Files	10-10
Halman viOhla ata	40 44
Using VODjects	10-11
Using vObjects	
	10-11
About vObjects	10-11 10-11
About vObjects Creating a vObject Importing a vObject into a Function	10-11 10-11 10-11
About vObjects  Creating a vObject  Importing a vObject into a Function  Editing Files & Folders	10-11 10-11 10-11
About vObjects Creating a vObject Importing a vObject into a Function	10-1110-1110-1110-12
About vObjects	

Moving Files	10-13
Copying Folders	10-14
Copying Files	10-14
Setting Folder Security	10-15
Other Functions	10-15

# 11 File Transfer

Infrared	11-1
Using Infrared	11-1
Activating Infrared	
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	11-4
Getting Started	11-4
Using Bluetooth®	11-6
Activating Bluetooth®	11-6
Pairing with a Bluetooth® Enabled Device	
Setting a Bluetooth® Compatible Device as a Trusted Device	11-7
Transferring Files via Bluetooth®	11-7
Connecting to an External Device	
Bluetooth® Settings	11-10
Displaying Details of a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device	11-10
Changing the Name of a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device	11-10
Deleting a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device	11-11
Showing My Handset to Other Devices	11-11
Using USB	11-12
Transferring Music from a PC to a Memory Card	
Connecting to a PC	

# 12 Settings

Sound Settings	12-1
Switching Manner Modes	12-1
Customizing Original Manner Mode	12-2
Setting the Sounds	12-3
Display Settings	12-5
Standby Display	12-5
Main Screens	12-6
Caller ID	12-7
Font Settings	12-8
Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese Only)	12-8
Backlight Settings	12-9
External Light Settings	12-9
Language Setting	12-10
Key Setting	12-10
Setting the Navigation Key Shortcuts	12-10
Setting the Side Key Function	12-11
Sub Menu View Setting	12-11
Answer Type Settings	12-11
Setting the Open to Talk	12-11
Setting Any Key Answer	12-11
Rejecting Incoming Calls	12-12
Rejecting Specific Incoming Calls	12-12
Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List	12-12
Caller ID Setting	12-13
Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID	12-13
Priority Setting	12-13
Memory Settings	12-14

Confirming the Memory Status	12-14
External Device Settings	12-14
Network Settings	12-14
Retrieving Network Information	12-14

## 13 Security Settings

Changing the Security Code	13-1
Setting PINs	
Setting PIN Request	
Changing PINs	
Canceling PIN Lock	
Password Lock	
Function Lock	
Biometrics	
Saving User Image	
Setting Biometrics	
3	
Biometric Authentication	
Setting Secret Mode	
IP Service Setting	
Keypad Lock	13-6
Hold	13-7
Reset Settings	13-7
Restricted Mode	
Restricting Outgoing Calls and SMS Messages	
Restricting Packet Transmission	
Restricting Internet Connection	

## **14 Convenient Functions**

Active Window	14-1
About Active Window	14-1
Opening Active Window	14-1
Members List	14-2
Live Monitor	14-3
Weather Information	14-3
Setting Active Window	14-4
Alarms	14-5
Setting Alarms	14-5
Deleting Alarms	
Alarm Time	14-7
Answering Machine	14-7
Setting the Answering Machine	14-7
Setting the Ringing Duration	
Playing/Deleting Messages	14-8
Notepad	
Setting the Category Icon According to the Contents of the Notepad	14-8
Calculator	
Converter	14-9
Dictionary	14-10
Calendar	14-10
Opening Calendar	14-10
Using Information Registered in the Event	14-10
Adding a New Event	14-14
Editing the Events	14-16
Deleting Events	
Alarm Date & Time	14-17

Jumping to the Specified Date	14-17
Setting the Calendar Lock	14-17
Changing the Colors of Dates and Day	s of the Week14-17
Using Reminder	14-18
Setting First View	14-18
Setting the Text Color	14-18
Tasks	14-19
Adding Task Items	14-19
Opening Tasks	14-21
Deleting Tasks	14-22
Setting the Tasks Lock	14-22
Time Table	14-22
Registering a Time Table	14-22
Checking the Time Table	14-22
Copying Time Tables	14-23
Deleting Time Tables	14-23
Setting Time Table	14-23
Kitchen Timer	14-24
Voice Recorder	14-24
Recording Sound	14-24
Playing Recordings	14-25
Number Memo	14-25
Viewing a Number Memo	14-25
World Clock	14-26
World Clock Setting	14-26
Displaying World Clock	14-27
<b>Setting the Charging in Progress</b>	Display14-27
Backup	14-28
Transferring Files to a Memory Card	14-28
Restoring	14-29

Restoring Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)	14-30
Deleting Backup Data	
Backing up Function Settings	
Transferring to Memory Card	
Restoring Settings	
Viewing Images on External Devices	14-32
Setting the TV System	
Using International Call Service	14-33
Changing the International Code	
Adding an Entry to the Country Code List	
Shortcut Menu	
Setting the Shortcut Menu	14-34
Accessing a Function from the Shortcut Menu	14-34
Editing the Function Names	
Changing the Shortcut Icons	
Moving Icons	
Deleting Shortcut Icons	14-35
Sending Touch Tones	
Sending Individual Touch Tones	
Sending Touch Tones Sequentially	
Using the Pause (P) for Sending Touch Tones	
Using the Audio Remote Control with Microphone	
Setting the Phone Number	
One-touch Calling	
One-touch Answering	
Setting Auto Answer	
Setting / title / tilstrei	14 30

# 15 Idokoro Mail

About Idokoro	Mail	15-1	
Apout Idokoro	IVIAII	12-1	

Saving People to the Recipients List	
Saving Areas to the Areas List	
Sending Notification Mail	15-3
Leaving or Arriving in the Specified Area	15-3
Sending Simple Notice of Your Location	15-3
16 Optional Services	
Optional Services	16-1
Call Forward	16-2
Setting/Activating Call Forward	
Deactivating Call Forward/Voice Mail	16-3
Voice Mail	16-4
Activating Voice Mail	16-4
Listening to Your Voice Mail	16-5
Missed Call Notification	16-5
Call Waiting	16-5
Setting/Activating Call Waiting	
Using Call Waiting	16-5
Switching between Two Callers	16-6
Multiparty Call	16-6
Making Calls to Other Parties during a Call	16-6
Switching Your Connection between Parties	16-6
Talking to All Parties	16-7
Call Barring	16-7
Activating Call Barring	16-7
Deactivating Call Barring	16-8
Changing Your Call Barring Service Code	

## 17 Messaging

About Messaging	17-1
Customizing Handset Address	17-1
Displaying New Messages	17-2
Checking New Messages	17-2
Checking Received Messages	17-3
Forwarding Messages from Server Mail Box	17-3
Creating & Sending an S! Mail	17-4
Available Options When You Enter an Address	17-5
Available Options When You Enter a Text	17-5
Decorating the Text	17-6
Attaching Files	17-7
Feeling Setting	17-7
Other Functions	17-8
Creating & Sending an SMS Message	17-9
Other Functions	17-10
Orafts	17-10
Wessage Box	17-11
Displaying Messages in the Message Box	17-11
Setting Security for Message Box	17-12
Changing the Message Box List Display Mode	17-12
Switching the Message List Display Mode	17-13
Splitting the Message List Window	17-13
Operations While Viewing Messages	17-13
Managing Message Folders	17-14
Replying to Messages	
Forwarding Messages	17-15
Making a Call to the Sender of the Message	17-16

Checking Delivery Report	17-16	Displaying Saved Pages	18-5
Linked Information	17-16	Bookmarks	18-5
Saving Attached Files	17-17	Adding a Bookmark	18-5
Editing/Sending the Unsent Messages	17-17	Using Bookmarks	18-5
Protecting/Unprotecting Messages	17-17	Editing Bookmarks	18-5
Deleting Messages	17-18	Setting Browser Security	18-7
Received/Sent Messages Operations	17-18	Operations for Web Pages	18-7
Server Mail Operations	17-19	Entering a URL Directly to Access a Website	18-7
Using the Mail List	17-19	Switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Websites	18-7
Forwarding Server Messages	17-20	Updating the Information	18-7
Deleting Server Messages	17-20	Using Linked Information	18-8
Checking the Server Mail Box Status	17-21	Copying Text from a Page	18-8
Message Settings	17-21	Useful Features While Viewing a Page	18-8
Display Settings	17-21	Checking Server Certificates	18-10
Creating Settings	17-21	Using Files in Web Pages	18-10
Send Settings	17-22	Browser Settings	18-12
Send Settings Receive Settings		Browser Settings	
3	17-23		18-12
Receive Settings	17-23	Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12
Receive Settings Setting 3D Pictogram Display	17-23	Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12 18-12
Receive Settings	17-23	Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12 18-12
Receive Settings Setting 3D Pictogram Display  18 Internet  Getting Started	17-23	Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12 18-12 18-12
Receive Settings  Setting 3D Pictogram Display  18 Internet  Getting Started  About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website	17-23 17-23 18-1	Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12 18-12 18-12 18-13
Receive Settings Setting 3D Pictogram Display  18 Internet  Getting Started	17-23 17-23 18-1	Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12 18-12 18-12 18-13 18-13
Receive Settings  Setting 3D Pictogram Display  18 Internet  Getting Started  About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website		Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12 18-12 18-13 18-13
Receive Settings		Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-12 18-12 18-12 18-12 18-13 18-13 18-13
Receive Settings		Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-1218-1218-1218-1218-1318-1318-1318-1318-14
Receive Settings  Setting 3D Pictogram Display  18 Internet  Getting Started  About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website Viewing Pages Stored in Cache Memory  SSL / TLS  Viewing and Using Websites		Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-1218-1218-1218-1218-1318-1318-1318-1318-1418-15
Receive Settings  Setting 3D Pictogram Display  18 Internet  Getting Started  About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website  Viewing Pages Stored in Cache Memory  SSL / TLS  Viewing and Using Websites  Accessing Yahoo! Keitai		Changing the Font Size of Text in Information	18-1218-1218-1218-1218-1318-1318-1318-1318-1518-1518-15

Resetting the Registered List	18-16	Hot Status	20-2
		About Hot Status Notifications	20-2
19 S! Appli		Creating a Hot Status Members List	20-3
•		Editing Your Hot Status Information	20-6
Getting Started		Editing Hot Status Members List	20-7
Downloading S! Appli		Checking Members' Hot Status Information	20-8
Starting S! Appli		Hot Status Settings	20-9
Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli	19-2	Circle Talk Basics	20-11
S! Appli Library	19-3	Making a Circle Talk Call	20-12
Deleting S! Appli	19-3	Answering a Circle Talk Call	20-13
Switching the S! Appli Library Display	19-3	Circle Talk Operations	20-13
Viewing S! Appli Properties	19-3	Contacting Another Member	20-13
Moving S! Appli	19-4	Adjusting the Earpiece Volume	20-13
Security Settings	19-4	Switching Sound Output	20-13
S! Appli Settings	19-5	Circle Talk Members List	20-14
Setting the Screensaver	19-5	Creating a Circle Talk Members List	20-14
Setting Priority While Running an S! Appli	19-5	Editing a Group Name	20-15
S! Appli Volume	19-6	Editing Group Member Information	20-15
Backlight Settings	19-6	Deleting Entries from Circle Talk Members List	20-16
S! Appli Vibration	19-6		
Updating the Information of an S! Appli on the Memory C	ard 19-6	21 S! GPS Navi	
Confirming the License Information of an S! Appli	19-7	21 3: 31 3 Navi	
Confirming the Route Certificate of an S! Appli	19-7	Using S! GPS Navi	21-1
		About S! GPS Navi	21-1
<b>20 Communications</b>		Starting a Navigation Application	21-1
		Checking Your Current Position	
S! Town (Japanese Only)	20-1	Sending Current Position by S! Mail	21-2
Using S! Town	20-1	Using Location Logs	
Using the Library	20-1	Saving Location Information to My Locations	21-3
S! Loop (Japanese Only)	20-1	Settings	21-3
• •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	

Setting Quick GPS	21-3	Adding a Lifestyle-Appli	23-3
Saving a Map URL	21-3	Checking IC Card Information	23-3
Selecting the Navigation Application	21-4	Disabling S! FeliCa	23-4
Positioning Lock	21-4	Turning IC Card Lock On or Off	23-4
Privacy Settings	21-4	Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location	23-5
Location Information Send Settings	21-4	Setting the Lock Phone Number	23-5
		Setting the Lock Password	23-5
22 Entertainment		Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off	23-6
		Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card	23-7
S! Cast (Japanese Only)	22-1	Configuring the External Startup Setting	23-8
Subscribing/Canceling Subscription	22-1		
Checking Content Updates	22-1	24 Appendix	
Downloading Content Manually	22-2	_ · /·pp = · · · · ·	
Checking History	22-2	Default Settings	24-2
Weather Indicator	22-3	Troubleshooting	24-11
Reading Electronic Books (Japanese Only)	22-4	Updating Software	24-13
Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)	22-5	Updating Software	24-13
About Ku-man's Room	22-5	Pictograph List	24-15
Opening Ku-man's Room	22-5	Arrange-picture List	24-16
Playing with Ku-man	22-6	Storage Capacity	24-17
Checking Messages from Ku-man	22-7	Main Specifications	24-18
		Glossary	24-20
23 S! FeliCa		Index	24-21
		Warranty & After Sales Service	24-32
About S! FeliCa	23-1	Warranty	24-32
Before Using S! FeliCa	23-1	After Sales Service	24-32
Precautions When Using S! FeliCa	23-1	Customer Service	24-33
Using S! FeliCa	23-2		
S! FeliCa Flow	23-2		
Using S! FeliCa	23-3		

## **About This Manual**

Please note, the 911T is referred to as "handset" in this manual.

### Symbols

- " > " navigates you to the next menu.
- "

  " navigates you to the next action/item.
- is used to confirm your selection.

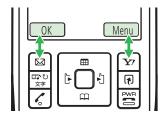
Some operations are not fully explained in this manual.

### **About Screenshots and Keys**

The screenshots and keys appearing in this manual are simplified to facilitate explanation, and so they may differ from the handset's actual screenshots and keys.

### Soft Keys

Use Soft Keys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of the Display.



- Press 🖾 to select OK.
- Press 🔀 to access Option menu.

#### Tip

- Soft Key operations vary by the current function.
- In this manual, Soft Key operations are described as below.
   → 127 (Menu)

### **Navigation Key**

The following notations are used to indicate Navigation Key operations.

Notation/Operation	Function
Press up	Opens Active Window* Increases volume Moves cursor up
Press down	Accesses Phone Book* Decreases volume Moves cursor down
Press left	Accesses Dialed* Moves cursor left
Press right	Accesses Received* Moves cursor right
Press center	Accesses Main menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the camera shutter-release

<sup>\*</sup> Functions accessible from Standby can be changed by modifying the Navigation Key settings (page 12-10).

## **Safety Precautions**

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
- Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
- When a child uses the handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
- The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words.
   Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.

### **Pictograph Descriptions**

Pictograph	Meaning
<u> </u>	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury <sup>1</sup> of the user.
<b>Warning</b>	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury! of the user.
<u></u> Caution	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury <sup>2</sup> to the user or damage to property <sup>3</sup> .

- 1 Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

### **Symbol Descriptions**

Symbol	Meaning
Prohibited	indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.
Compulsory	① indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out.  The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.

### **Limitation of Liability**

- · SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes, lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of SoftBank and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently, or use under other abnormal conditions.
- · SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- · SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- · SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by SoftBank and Toshiba.
- · Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction, repair or other improper handling of the product. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- · SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum





Do not disassemble, modify or repair the handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of the handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 24-33).



Do not dispose of the handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone in a fire or expose it to heat

If the handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone is exposed to water, do not dry it artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not charge, use or leave the handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone in hot places such as near a fire or heater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

## **⚠** Danger



Do not expose the handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio Keep water remote control with microphone to fluids such as water, perspiration or seawater

> Do not leave the handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone outdoors, in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used

> Do not place the handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If the handset is dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off the handset and remove the battery pack. If the handset, battery pack or charger is exposed to fluids such as water during charging, remove the power plug from the outlet immediately. Do not charge the battery pack while it is wet or damp. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 24-33).



Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery pack into the handset or connecting the handset to Prohibited the charger

#### Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not touch the battery pack terminal (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Prohibited Doing so may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.



Do not charge, overheat, disassemble or short the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or put it Prohibited into a fire

Doing so may cause ignition, rupturing, malfunction or fire.



Do not use a battery pack other than one supplied with or designated for the handset

Compulsory Do not use the battery pack for any other handset Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not use a charger other than one supplied with or designated for the handset to charge the battery pack Compulsory Do not use the charger for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery pack or the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset comes into Compulsory contact with your skin or clothes, wash it immediately with clean water as this may hurt your body

> And if it gets into your eyes, do not rub them, and have them immediately treated by an ophthalmologist after washing them with clean water

> If the fluid sticks to the equipment, wipe it out without touching it directly

> If the fluid is left as it is, your skin may get irritated or there may be fear of losing your sight.



Do not use the handset while driving Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, TV, video, music, Mobile Light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.



Be sure to turn off the handset before you approach to the place where flammable gas may exist or may Compulsory be produced

> Doing so may ignite the gases and start a fire. Turn off the handset and do not charge it wherever gases may be present (gas station, etc.). Be sure to turn off the handset before using S! FeliCa-compatible reader/writer within gas stations. (When the IC Card Lock is set, turn off the handset after unlocking the setting.)



Do not swing the handset by its strap, TV rod antenna, Stereo Earphone, USB cable, a video output cable or audio remote control with microphone

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.



### Turn off the handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves.



Remove the power plug from the outlet if the AC Charger is not to be used for a long period of time or Unplug power before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Turn off the handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Compulsory Failing to do so may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment and cause an accident.

Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.



Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take Compulsory pictures, record videos or watch TV

> Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident



### Do not use the handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage

Compulsory Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for the AC Charger and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for an In-Car Charger.



#### Wipe away any dust on the plug of the AC Charger with a dry cloth after removing the plug from the Compulsory outlet

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.



Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices

- Compulsory · Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags
  - · Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal. etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.



#### When thunder is heard outside, stop using the handset immediately

#### Turn off the handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using the handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.



#### If the battery pack fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately

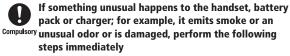
Compulsory Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 24-33).



When inserting the AC Charger plug into an AC household outlet, make sure that a metal strap or any

other metal object does not touch the plug

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.



- If the battery pack is charging, unplug the AC Charger from the AC household outlet or unplug the In-Car Charger from the cigarette lighter socket.
- 2. Make sure that the handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery pack.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire or the handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 24-33).



# Do not drop the handset or battery pack or subject it to excessive shock

Prohibited

bited Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



# Do not sit down with the handset in your trousers pocket

Prohibited

Excess weight may damage the Display, battery pack or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury. If the handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical compulsory equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

#### Observe the following guidelines

- If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use the handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted device.
- Turn off the handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
- 3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
  - Do not bring the handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
  - · Turn off the handset in a hospital ward.
  - Turn off the handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
  - Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use the handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.
- 4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves.

The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



# Do not use the AC Charger with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply

Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



# Do not insert the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset with wrong polarity [(+) & (-)]

Doing so may cause the malfunction of the equipment as well as cause the dry cell battery to leak.



Do not use the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset after the "Recommended Use-by Date" displayed on the battery expired, or do not leave the used-up dry cell battery as being inserted

Doing so may cause the malfunction of the equipment as well as cause the dry cell battery to leak.



### Keep the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset out of the reach of small children

d If it is mistakenly swallowed, consult a doctor as soon as possible because this may cause suffocation or injury to stomach etc.

## **⚠** Caution



Do not use or leave the handset or battery pack in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or d in hot places such as inside a car in the sun

Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.



Keep the handset, battery pack and charger away from infants and small children

<sup>1</sup> Failing to do so may result in the battery pack or memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.



Make sure that the charger terminals (metal parts) do not come into contact with wires or other metal dobiects

Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.



Do not pull the cord when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger from an AC household outlet or d socket

Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire. Hold the plug when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger.



Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of the AC Charger and In-Car Charger

d Do not damage or modify them
Do not place objects on them
Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters

Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



**Do not plug or unplug the AC Charger with wet hands**Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.

No wet hands



Keep magnetic cards away from the handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing the handset

Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.



Do not use the handset in a vehicle if it affects invehicle electronic devices

Use of the handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.

## **⚠** Caution



# Do not place the handset on an unstable or unlevel surface

ed Doing so may result in the handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.



# Do not dispose of the used battery pack with ordinary garbage

Prohibited

Insulate the terminal with tape and then dispose of the used battery pack separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



# Do not touch the handset with sweaty hands or place it into a pocket of sweaty clothes

**Prohibited** Sweat and humidity may erode the internal components of the handset and cause overheating or malfunction.



# Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running

Prohibited Doing so may result in a flat battery.



# Do not use any other dry cell batteries than the AAA battery for Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

d Doing so may cause the malfunction of the equipment as well as cause the dry cell battery to leak.



# If the fuse for the In-Car Charger blows, replace it with a designated fuse

Compulsory Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.

For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of the In-Car Charger.



### Use the handset in well-lighted places and with an appropriate distance between your eyes and its

Compulsory screen when you watch TV

Failing to do so may cause decreased vision.



# Do not leave the TV rod antenna extended except when using TV

**Compulsory** Talking on the handset without retracting the TV rod antenna may cause injury.



If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using the handset and consult with a dermatologist

The following materials and surface treatments have been used for the handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in Compulsory some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
Outer housing (Display side)	Magnesium alloy (Acrylic baking coating)
Outer housing (side of Keypad, Main Camera side, Battery Cover), Keys, Side Keys, Memory Card Slot Cap (hard area), Earphone Microphone Jack Cap (hard area), Screw Cover (back of Display, Main Camera side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (back of Display, upper side of Keypad, bottom of Keypad), External Terminal Cap (hard area)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)*
Display Panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic ink processing)
Key Panel	Urethane UV cured resin
Main Camera Panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Mesh for Speaker Holes	Non-woven cloth
Memory Card Slot Cap (soft area), Earphone Microphone Jack Cap (soft area), External Terminal Cap (soft area)	Elastomer resin
Handset Charging Terminal	Stainless steel (gold plating, nickel undercoat)
Infrared Port	Acrylic resin
Screws, Strap Tag	Steel (nickel coating)
TV Rod Antenna (top part)	PC/ABS resin
TV Rod Antenna (pullout part, top part)	PA resin
TV Rod Antenna (pullout part, base part)	Elastomer resin
TV Rod Antenna (sleeve part)	Cadmium-less brass
Antenna (hinge part)	Stainless steel
Slide (flat part)	Stainless steel (Fluorine baked coating)
Slide (rail part)	POM resin
Slide (stopper part)	Elastomer resin

<sup>\*</sup> Tin undercoat for Silver model

## Caution



Before using the handset, make sure that no metal objects (such as pins) are stuck to the Earpiece or Compulsory Stereo Speakers

> Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear or hand injury, etc.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings

Compulsory Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.



Do not use the Mobile Light for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting

Doing so may dazzle the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.



Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on the handset during charging using a Prohibited USB connection, In-Car Charger, AC Charger, etc.

Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.



Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote Compulsory control with microphone

Do not use Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone continuously for long periods of time

Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing defect regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.



Do not insert objects other than the memory card into the Memory Card Slot

Doing so may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Cover the slot with the cap at times other than when you are inserting or removing the memory card.



Keep your face away from the Memory Card Slot when inserting or removing the memory card Keep the memory card out of the reach of small children

If the memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.

## **⚠** Caution



Do not subject the memory card to vibration or shock or remove it from the slot or turn off the handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.



## Use only the memory card supported by the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

The handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of February, 2007).



Do not let children use cables such as USB cable, a video output cable, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone unsupervised and keep cables out of infant's reach

An injury may be caused if, for instance, the cable is wrapped around a neck.



# Do not point the infrared beam at anyone's eye during infrared communication

Prohibited Doing so may cause eye damage.



#### Do not use the Mobile Light close to eyes

Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with the Mobile Light too close to the eyes of infants.



# Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing the USIM card

d Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.



### Use only a USIM card designated for the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.



#### Do not bend the TV rod antenna with excessive force

Doing so may result in damage or distortion of the TV rod antenna and cause injury.



# Do not pinch hair, finger, charger's cord, strap, etc. when you open/close the handset

**Compulsory** If you try to pull out a pinched thing too hard, or to move the slide, it may cause an injury or damage.

### **General Notes**

### **Using Your Handset**

- The handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call or the TV image/sound may be suddenly cut off.
- When using the handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of the handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theaters or on buses and trains.
- The handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit the handset for inspection based on this law.
- Use of the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
- The handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
- The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the
  possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be
  ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
- The handset is exclusively for use in Japan. It cannot be used outside Japan.
- Data stored on the handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions.
  - · The handset is used improperly.
  - · The handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
  - · The handset is turned off during operation.
  - · The battery pack is completely discharged.
  - · The handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery pack before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time. When the battery pack is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
- Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- When the handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, the handset surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching the handset under such conditions.
- When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take the handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if the handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else.
  - Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking the handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, Libya, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).

    For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.
- If you have hearing aids, use of the handset may interfere with some operations of the hearing aids. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aids.

### **Inside Vehicles**

- Do not use the handset while driving. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law.
- Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

#### **Aboard Aircraft**

 Do not use the handset on an aircraft. Do not turn the handset back on while you are on the aircraft. Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

### **Handling Basics**

- Do not use the handset in extreme temperatures, direct sunlight and humid or dusty places.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- To clean the handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Avoid exposing the handset to rain, snow or high humidity. The handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone and other optional accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on to avoid malfunction.
- If the battery pack has been removed from the handset or the handset has
  not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or
  altered. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any
  damage or loss resulting from such negligence.

- The battery pack is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery pack with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery pack designated for the handset.
- Do not dispose battery pack with municipal waste.
   Insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery pack in a plastic bag and take to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.
- Li-ion
- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a defect or malfunction. If the Display is left on for a long period of time, pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure the audio remote control with microphone is securely plugged into Earphone Microphone Jack and Stereo Earphone into the jack of audio remote control with microphone. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or audio remote control with microphone. Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing damage regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly when walking, resulting in an accident.
- When Earphone Microphone Jack and Cable and Handset Charging Terminal are not in use, make sure to replace the caps. Otherwise dust or water may enter the handset causing handset malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging Stereo Earphone
  or audio remote control with microphone. Pulling the cord may cause
  damage or malfunction.

- The communication antenna of the handset is built into the body and does
  not protrude. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if you touch or cover the
  portion of the body containing the internal antenna (page 1-5). In
  particular, do not affix things like stickers onto this portion of the body.
  Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving
  messages or accessing the Web.
- When you replace the handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored in the handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop the USIM card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction
- Do not allow the USIM card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave the USIM card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing the USIM card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places.
   Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep the USIM card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in the USIM card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using the USIM card, read the instruction manual of the USIM card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- Do not put the handset into the bag or pocket without retracting the TV rod antenna. Doing so may apply excessive force on the TV rod antenna and result in damage.

#### **Functional Limitations**

- The following functions are not available after replacing your handset or terminating the subscription.
  - Camera
  - · Digital TV
  - · Media Player
  - · S! Appli
- The above functions may become unavailable after handset has not been used for a long time.

#### **Mobile Camera**

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

### **Mobile Light & External Light**

- Do not use the Mobile Light in hot, cold or humid places. Doing so may shorten its life.
- The Mobile Light and External Light have a limited life. Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

### Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use the handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

### **Right of Portrait**

Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

#### **TOSHIBA CORPORATION**

# IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

#### **End User License Agreement**

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset").

Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

1. <u>License Grant</u>. Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to create derivative works based on the Software

- 2. Copyright. The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
- 3. Reverse Engineering. You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organization, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.
- 4. DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY. The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE

- AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.
- 5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.

PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE
INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES, ADDRESSES,
PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING
YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE
DELETED OR FRASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

- Laws. This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan. All disputes arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Tokyo District Court.
- 7. Export Laws. Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
- 8. <u>Third Party Beneficiary</u>. You agree that certain suppliers of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as a user.

### **Trademarks and Patents**

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

inited States Patents and/oi	their counterparts in (	otner nations :
4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784		



Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



 $\mathsf{microSD}^\mathsf{TM}$  is a trademark of the SD Card Association.

Powered by Mascot Capsule  $^{\circ}$  /Micro3D Edition  $^{\rm TM}$  Mascot Capsule  $^{\circ}$  is a registered trademark of HI Corporation  $^{\circ}$  2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.



The Bluetooth word mark and logo are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by TOSHIBA is under license.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.

SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.



T9 Text Input is covered by Japan Pat.No. 特許 3532780,3492981 and other patents pending.

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Copyright © 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT AND/OR BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES. INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT, ERIC YOUNG OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY. WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

a is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.



Edy is a brand name of the prepaid-type electronic money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Sha-mail, Sky Mail, Arrange Mail, S! Mail, S! Appli, S! GPS Navi, S! CAST, S! Address Book, Hot Status, Circle Talk, PC Site Browser, Movie Sha-mail, Navi appli, Live Monitor, S! Town, S! Loop, Feeling Mail, Location Navi and Lifestyle-Appli are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Copyright © 1995-2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY, Inc.

"SOFTBANK" SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

This product contains NetFront Browser, NetFront Messaging Client, NetFront IMS Client, NetFront DTV Profile Wireless Edition and NetFront Document Viewer of ACCESS CO.,LTD.

# ACŒESS™ **NetFront**®

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are trademarks or registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U. S. and other countries. Copyright © 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents Pending.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.



This product uses OKAO<sup>™</sup> Vision of OMRON Corporation.

"OKAO" and "OKAO Vision" are registered trademarks of OMRON Corporation in Japan.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo!/Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Microsoft, PowerPoint, and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

# SAR

This 911T mobile phone complies with the technical standards for the absorption of radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the Japanese government. These technical standards, based upon scientific evidence, were established to ensure that RF energy from wireless mobile devices used next to the head do not have a serious effect on human health. The maximum Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which measures the average radio wave energy absorbed by the human head, set by the Japanese government is 2 W/kg\*. This allowed value includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value corresponds with the international guidelines prescribed by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The SAR value for the 911T is 0.405 W/kg. The value conforms with the guidelines set by the Japanese government and is the maximum measured value of the transmission power of this phone. Depending on the product, there may be minute differences in the SAR. However, they are within the allowed limits. During calling, the actual SAR is lower as the phone is designed to use the minimum transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network.

Additional information about SAR can be found at the website listed below.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications, Radio Wave Usage website: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB), Radio Waves in Our Lives website:

http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html

\* The technical guidelines are stipulated in the Ministerial Ordinance Related to the Radio Law (Wireless Equipment Regulations, Article 14-2).

#### **About SoftBank's Body SAR Policy**

- \* Body SAR: Refers to the SAR of the maximum transmission power when continuously calling with the handset attached to the body and using an earphone.
- \* Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Measured value of continuous calling at 6 minute intervals.
  - Our technical standards for body SAR include the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) standards and information from Europe. For more information see the sections on "FCC RF Exposure Information" and "European RF Exposure Information."
- \*\*\* Placement on the body: Measurements were taken with the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the normal position of the handset. In order to maintain compliance with radio frequency (RF) exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

For additional information, see SoftBank's website: http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html

#### **FCC RF Exposure Information**

The guidelines established by the FCC are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed according to FCC standards for each model and the maximum SAR value for this model handset, when tested next to the body as described in this user quide, is 1.040 W/kg.

Placement on the body: Measurements for the 911T were taken with the normal position as the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm. In order to maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the homepage listed below:

Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website: http://www.phonefacts.net

#### **European RF Exposure Information**

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed limits recommended by international guidelines for exposure to radio waves. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when positioned near the body is 0.643 W/kg\*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device during operation is typically below that indicated above. This is because the handset was designed to use the minimum level of transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network. The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a "hands-free" device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional information about SAR can be found at the WHO homepage listed below. http://www.who.int/emf

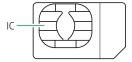
\* These tests for wearing the mobile device on the body are carried out in accordance with FCC standards and the values are based on European requirements.

# **USIM Card**

The USIM card is an IC card that stores customer information such as your phone number. Insert USIM card in USIM card compatible SoftBank handsets only.

### About the USIM Card

- If the USIM card is not inserted, the handset cannot be used.
- Save Phone Book entries and SMS messages on USIM card (pages 4-11, 17-13).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not insert USIM cards into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM cards. Malfunction may result.
- For details on the USIM card, refer to the instruction manual provided with the USIM card.



#### **Important**

- USIM cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM cards to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM cards are recycled.
- USIM card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Backup USIM card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM card or handset (with USIM card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

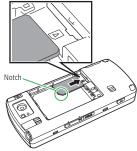
# Inserting & Removing the USIM Card

 Before inserting or removing the USIM card, turn off the handset and remove the battery pack.

### Inserting

# 1 Slide USIM with IC chip (page 1-1) facing down

• Line up the notch on the USIM card with the inlet opening.



2 Push the USIM card all the way in

#### Removing

# 1 Pull the USIM card straight out



#### Note

- Avoid touching or scratching the USIM card's IC.
- Do not force the USIM card into or out of the handset; damage may result.
- Take care not to lose the USIM card after removing it from the handset.

#### Tip

Some Chaku-Uta®/Chaku-Uta Full®, melody, movie, S! Appli, Lifestyle-Appli or book files in your handset or memory card may be inaccessible after repairing or replacing the handset, terminating the subscription, or replacing the USIM card. Preinstalled S! Appli, S! Town and BookSurfing applications may become unavailable if a different USIM card is inserted.

# **USIM PINs**

For security, the USIM card has two security codes: PIN and PIN2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

### PIN

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. When *PIN Settings* (page 13-1) is set to *ON*, PIN is required each time the handset is turned on. The default setting is "9999". PIN can be changed (page 13-1).

### PIN2

This is the four to eight digit security code required for operations such as resetting Call Time&Cost and setting Fixed Dial #. The default setting is "9999". PIN2 can be changed (page 13-1).

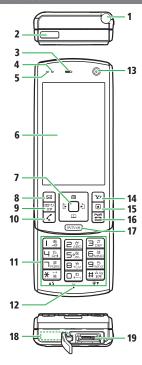
### PIN Lock & PUK Codes

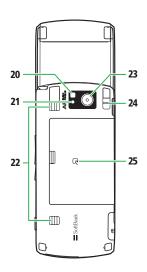
PIN lock is set when an incorrect PIN or PIN2 is entered three times consecutively. PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) codes are required to cancel PIN lock/PIN2 lock. To obtain PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

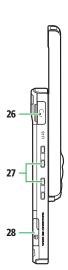
#### Note

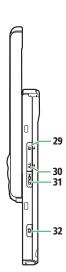
 If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten consecutive times, USIM card is locked. USIM card lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

# Handset









- **1. TV Rod Antenna**: Extend for TV reception.
- 2. Infrared Port: Use for infrared transmissions (page 11-1).
- 3. Earpiece
- 4. External Light: Flashes for incoming calls, messages, etc.
- Charging Indicator: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
- 6. Display
- 7. Navigation Key : Move cursor up, down, left or right, access functions assigned to the Navigation Key (page 12-10), etc.
  Center Key : Access the Main menu from Standby. Use this key to confirm selected items and perform selected operations. This key also acts as the shutter button during camera use.
- Left Soft Key S: Access the Messaging menu from Standby. To temporarily unlock IC Card Lock (page 23-4) when the lock is set, press and hold this key from Standby.
- 9. Media Player Key (Seess Media Player (Audio menu) from Standby or use to make/answer video calls.
- **10. Send Key** [ ]: Make and answer calls.
- **11. Keypad**: Enter phone numbers, characters, etc.

Press and hold a key ( $\boxed{1.8}$  to  $\boxed{9.8}$ ) from Standby to search for Phone Book entries of the column assigned to the key.

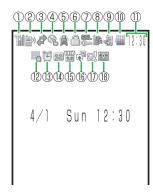
★/**\$Key**(\* \*\*): Enter \*, pictographs, emoticons, etc. In a menu list, use to scroll to the previous page and in camera mode, use to turn on/off Mobile Light. To display My Status (page 20-6), press and hold \*\* in from Standby.

#/**W Key E Section**: Enter **#**, symbols, or switch between uppercase/ lowercase, etc. In a menu list, use to scroll to the next page. To set or cancel manner mode (page 2-10), press and hold **Fig. 9** from Standby.

- 12. Microphone
- 13. Sub Camera: Used for video call, etc.
- **14. Right Soft Key** : Access Yahoo! Keitai from Standby. To access Yahoo! Keitai menu, press and hold this key from Standby.
- **15. Shortcut Key** : Access the Shortcuts menu (page 14-34).
- 16. End/Power Key : Power handset on/off, end calls/operations and return to Standby.
- 17. Clear/Memo Key (\*\*DEPICE\*\*): Delete characters and return to the previous operation. Also use this key to access Answering Machine from Standby.
- 18. Internal Antenna: Antenna is built into your handset. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if you touch or cover this portion. Do not affix stickers. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- 19. External Device Port: Connect AC Charger and other devices.
- **20. Mobile Light**: Used as flash when taking pictures or recording videos.
- Camera/Video Indicator: Flashes when the camera or video is activated.
- 22. Stereo Speakers
- 23. Main Camera: Used for taking pictures and recording videos.
- 24. Handstrap Hole
- **25. Logo**: S! FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded. Place the **1** logo near a reader/writer.

- **26. Earphone Microphone/AV OUT Jack**: Connect Stereo Earphone (optional) or video output cable (optional).
- 27. Charger Terminal: Used for charging your handset with the desktop cradle.
- 28. Memory Card Slot
- **29. Side Key (Up)** (1): Access Circle Talk Members List (page 20-12). Press and hold (1) to set/cancel manner mode, send a Simple Notice of your location (page 15-3), turn the Mobile Light on, or display My Status (page 20-6). The key function can be changed (page 12-11).
- **30. Side Key (Down)** : Use to open Landscape Index (page 1-19). Press and hold | from Standby to watch Digital TV (page 6-4).
- **31. HOLD Key** Press and hold while handset is closed to lock Side Keys or cancel the lock feature (page 13-7). Also use this key for biometric authentication when your face picture is saved (page 13-4).
- **32. Camera Key** : Activate the camera, etc. This key also acts as the shutter button during camera use.

# **Display Indicators**



- ① 🌃 Signal Strength
  - Mark Strong Weak
  - Moderate
    Faint
  - Out of Range
  - **Mode On** (page 2-11)
- ② 🔊 🗗 Voice/Video Call
  - Dial-up Connection
  - Positioning
  - > / Quick GPS Activated/Paused (page 21-3)
- ③ Packet Transmission
  - **(\*)** Displaying Picture File with Location Information

- **My Status Online** (page 20-7)
- Packet Transmission Ready
- Packet Network Range
- **d** 3G Network Unconnected
- 4 S IC Card Lock Temporarily Disabled (page 23-4)
  - **IC Card Lock Active** (page 23-4)
- ⑤ New S! Cast (page 22-1)
  - Reception of Rights Object Indicates the reception of a content key (page 17-3) during operation.
  - Message Box Full

  - **New S! Mail/SMS** (page 17-2)
  - Delivery Report
  - New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
- (6) **Active** (page 13-7)
  - **PC Website Connected** (page 18-4)
  - New Live Monitor Info (pages 14-3, 18-16)
  - Memory Card Inserted (page 9-1)
- 7 🎏 Web SSL

Indicates a connection to an information page with security protection (page 18-2).

- ⊗/S Bluetooth® Connection Established/Connection Standby (page 11-6)
- Bluetooth® Connection Established (SCMS-T device supported)
- **Some Bluetooth® Connections Lost**
- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Connection(s) Lost
- Infrared Communication (page 11-2)
- **USB Connection** (page 11-13)
- (page 24-13)
  - **⑤ External Connection for Data Synchronization**

- Digital TV Recording in Progress (page 6-7)
- S! Appli Activated/Paused (page 19-2)
- Music File Playing (page 8-2)
- Music File Playback Paused
- Video File Playing (page 8-2)
- Streaming (page 8-8)
- Missed Call (page 2-7)
  - **Manner Mode (Silent)** (page 12-1)
  - Manner Mode (Alarms) (page 12-1)
  - Manner Mode (Drive) (page 12-1)
  - %/%/% Original Manner Mode (page 12-1)
- 10 Battery Level

  - Low

- Charge Immediately
- Charging (page 1-12)
- ① Time
- (12) Keypad Lock Active (page 13-6)
  - **Password Lock Active** (page 13-2)
- (13) **MATAIN Set** (page 14-5)
- (4) May Machine On and You Have a Message (pages 2-4, 14-7)
  - Answering Machine Off and You Have a Message (pages 2-4, 14-7)
- (5) Wew Voice Mail Message (page 16-4)
  - **Solution Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice Call)** (page 16-2)
  - Secondary Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Video Call) (page 16-2)
  - Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice and Video Calls) (page 16-2)
- (li) Information Prompt Redisplay (page 1-9)
- (page 20-2) We Hot Status Notification (Saving Request)
- Secret Mode On (page 13-5)

# **Information Prompt**

Information Prompt appears to inform you of missed calls, new messages and other information.

When Information Prompt appears, scroll to an item and press

The following items are available.



### **Information Prompt Items**

Stop Snooze : Cancel snooze (page 14-7)

Missed Calls : Missed calls (page 2-7)

Missed Calls: New Voice Mail message(s) at Voice Mail Center

(page 16-4)

Ans Machine : New message(s) recorded (page 2-4)
New Messages : Unread S! Mail/SMS (page 17-2)

**Unsent Messages**: Unsent S! Mail/SMS

Partly Sent : Unsent S! Mail for some recipients

Delivered : Unread delivery report(s) (page 17-16)

Missed CT : Missed Circle Talk calls (page 2-7)

Missed CT
: Missed Circle Talk calls (page 2-7)
Notification
New Hot Status notification (page)

☑ Notification☑ New S! Cast∴ New Hot Status notification (page 20-2)∴ Content update(s) available (page 22-1)

S! Cast Info : S! Cast update failed (page 22-2)

Weather Updated: Weather report update available (page 22-3)

**Update Failed**: Live Monitor update failed (page 14-3)

Software Update : Software updated (page 24-13)

Content Key Memory Full (Keys Full)

: Content key cannot be saved any more

Resume S! Appli : S! Appli paused

IC Card Request : Request from Reader/Writer

#### Tip

- To close Information Prompt, press 🖃. To redisplay Information Prompt, press and hold 🔞.
- If the number of unchecked items exceeds 100, "am" appears instead
  of the number of unchecked items.
- When New S! Cast, S! Cast Info, Update Failed and IC Card Request prompts appear, access is available to only the most recent item

# **Opening and Closing the Handset**

When you want to use the keypad for input operations, etc., slide the display all the way up until it clicks into place. To close the handset, carefully slide the display back down.





#### Note

- Never affix a sticker or other item to the back of the display. Doing so can cause the item to become snagged when you open or close the handset
- Take care not to touch the keypad when you open or close the handset to avoid error operations.

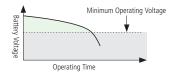
# **Battery & Charger**

### **Getting Started**

Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.

#### **Battery Pack**

 The battery pack of your handset uses a lithium ion battery. It has a tendency to gradually lose its voltage with the operating time as shown in the figure below.



- Extreme temperatures will reduce battery capacity and shorten the operating time. Do not use the battery pack in high temperatures. This may shorten battery life.
- Charging at low temperatures does not produce the best results. Make sure you charge the battery pack at temperatures of 5 to 35 degrees.
- When storing the battery pack separately, make sure you put it in a case, etc. and store it in a dry and cool place. This will avoid short-circuiting the battery pack terminal. It is recommended that you store it uncharged.
- Repeated charging and discharging of a battery shortens the operating time.

- When disposing of a used battery pack, insulate the terminal with tape or
  place the battery pack into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest
  SoftBank Shop, a recycle shop or follow the local disposal regulations for
  environmental conservation.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place heavy objects on it.

#### **Battery Drain**

- The battery pack discharges little by little when stored for a long time even if it is not used. It self-discharges at a rate of 10 to 20% per month and about 50% per half a year.
- If the handset is used in a location with poor signal reception or left in Standby outside the service area, or if you use the mobile light or launch S! Appli, it will shorten the battery's operating time.

### **Battery Level**

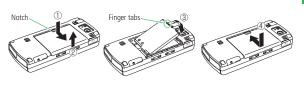
 The battery level on the display (page 1-7) changes with the operating time. Charge or replace it when the level is low. When the battery is about to run out " " ", a message appears and the battery alarm tone sounds. The handset shuts down after 30 seconds.

#### Charging

- The battery pack must be inside handset to charge it. Use a specified AC Charger, desktop cradle and In-Car Charger (optional).
- Clean Cable and Handset Charging Terminal and battery pack's terminal with a dry cotton swab. It may cause contact failure if it is unclean.

- If the message *Please check connection with your charger* appears, clean the charger terminals, battery pack terminal, and external connecters with a dry cotton swab, etc, and try again.
  - When the message still does not disappear, stop charging immediately, and take the battery pack to your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- Do not charge the battery pack in humid places.
- Charging is possible while your handset is turned on, but takes longer than while your handset is turned off.
- When charging while your handset is turned on, " appears on the display and turns to " when charging is complete.
- The handset and charger may warm during charging. However, if it overheats, stop using immediately. There may be some defect.
- If a call arrives while the handset is being charged, it sounds the ringtone, vibrates, or flashes the external light in the same way as usual.

# Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack



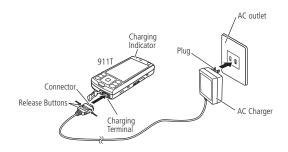
- Press down on notch and slide battery cover (1)
- **2** Lift up the battery cover (2)
  - Aligning the battery pack terminal with the handset terminal, press the battery pack into place (3)
    - To remove the battery pack, insert a fingernail beneath the bottom or side tab and lift out the battery pack.
- 4. Place the battery cover on your handset and slide it until it clicks into place (4)

#### Note

 Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on. Insert a fingernail beneath the bottom or side tab and lift out the battery pack.
 Do not lift out the battery pack in any other way than this.

# **Charging with the AC Charger**

Charging Time | Approx. 120 min.



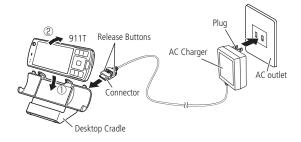
- **1** Connect the AC Charger connector to Handset
  - Inscription on the AC Charger connector should face up.
- Insert the plug into an AC outlet Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.
- 3 After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the AC outlet
- **A** Remove the connector from Handset
  - Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the AC Charger from Handset.

#### Note

- AC Charger supports a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.

### **Charging with the Desktop Cradle**

Charging Time | Approx. 120 min.



- 1 Attach the AC Charger connector to Desktop Cradle
  - Inscription on the AC Charger connector should face up.
- 2 Insert the AC Charger plug into an AC outlet
- Place Handset on Desktop Cradle (①) and press Handset down until it clicks into place (②)

  Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

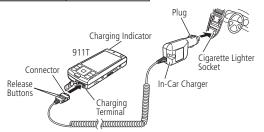
- 4 After Charging Indicator goes out, pull the top of Handset forward and remove it from Desktop Cradle
- **5** Remove the AC Charger plug from the AC outlet

#### Note

- AC Charger support a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.

# Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional)

Charging Time | Approx. 120 min.



- 1 Connect the In-Car Charger connector to Handset
  - The inscription on the In-Car Charger connector should face up.
- 2 Insert the plug into the cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

- After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the cigarette lighter socket
- 4 Remove the connector from Handset
  - Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the In-Car Charger from Handset.

#### Note

- Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running.
   Doing so may drain the battery.
- If you move away from the car, unplug the In-Car Charger. In a car
  where the cigarette lighter socket works even after removing the car key
  (the Charging Indicator illuminates even after removing the car key),
  leaving the In-Car Charger plugged in may drain the battery.
- Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.

# **Turning Handset Power On/Off**

#### Turning Handset Power On

# 1 Press and hold

The power is turned on and the Standby screen appears.

#### Tip

- · After you turn on your handset, it does the following.
  - A wake-up alarm sounds (page 12-4).
  - The Charging Indicator illuminates.
  - The Camera/Video Indicator illuminates.
  - The External Light flashes.
- If PIN Settings (page 13-1) is set to ON, enter your PIN.
- The following windows appear the first time you turn on the power of your handset or after performing *Reset All* or *Reset Setting* (page 13-7).
  - Date&Time Settings (page 1-15)
  - Retrieving Network Information (page 1-15) (appears when you press ●, ⑤, ☞ or । in Standby)

### **Turning Handset Power Off**

# 1 Press and hold 🔄

The power is turned off.

#### Tip

- Before your handset turns off, it does the following.
  - The shutdown tone sounds (page 12-4).
  - The External Light flashes.
- If handset is not used for long periods of time (powered off or out of range), some features may become unavailable. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

### **Retrieving Network Information**

Before using Yahoo! Keitai, Mail, S! Appli, etc., retrieve the network connection information.

The first time you press lacktriangle, lacktriangle, or lacktriangle after purchasing your handset, a prompt appears.

1 In Standby, press ■, , ☞ or 🔻

**2** Select *YES*→

A network connection is established and the network information is retrieved

#### Note

- If network information is not retrieved, it will limit some of the available features of the handset.
- After you replace the USIM Card, make sure you retrieve network information

#### Tip

 You can also retrieve network information from the Main menu (page 12-14).

# **Date & Time**

- 1 In Standby, press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Settings*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select *Phone Settings* $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Clock \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 3 Select *Date&Time*→ ■→Enter the year, month, date and time→
  - To set the date and time, enter the last two digits of the year and the month, the day, the hour, and the minute in two digits respectively. Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
  - While entering the date and time, you can move the cursor by pressing o. You can also increase or decrease the numbers selected by the cursor by pressing o.
  - The day of the week is set automatically.

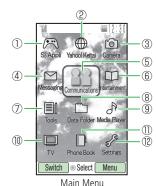
### Tip

#### You can:

- Enter a date from 2000/01/02 to 2099/12/30.
- Switch the clock to 12-hour system (page 12-8).
- Change the clock display format (page 12-6).
- Set DST (Daylight Saving Time) (page 14-26).

# **Accessing Functions from Main Menu**

To access the Main menu, press 
in Standby. Use to select a menu icon and press to access that menu.



①S! Appli

Access applications such as games (Chapter 19).

Library

- Settings
- Card Sync
- Certification
- Information

#### 2 Yahoo! Keitai

Access Yahoo! Keitai menu and download pictures, melodies and applications. Use PC Browser for Internet access to the Web (Chapter 18).

- Yahoo! Keitai
- Bookmarks
- Saved Pages
- Enter URL

History

- Live Monitor
- PC Browser Settings

### **3**Camera

Take pictures and record videos (Chapter 7).

- MobileVideo
- DigitalVideo Mail
- Short Video
- Scan Data

#### **4** Messaging

Create S! Mail/SMS messages. Also check received and sent S! Mail/SMS messages (Chapter 17).

- Message Box
- · Create New
- Templates Unsent
- Server Mail Settings

#### **⑤Communications**

You can communicate with other users or enjoy shopping (Chapter 20).

- S! Town
- S! Loop
- Hot Status
- Circle Talk

#### **6** Entertainment

Access S! Cast functions, launch BookSurfing and visit Ku-man's Room (Chapter 22).

SI Cast

- BookSurfing
- e-Book Viewer
- Ku-man's Room

#### (7)Tools

Access preinstalled accessories (Chapters 14, 21, 23, 24).

Alarms

Ans Machine

Notepad

- Calculator
- Dictionary Tasks
- Calendar Useful Tools
- Photo Show
- Lifestyle

• Ring Song · Tone

- S! GPS Navi Backup
- Update

### ® Data Folder

Save/access files here (Chapter 10).

- Pictures
- S! Appli Music
- Videos

- TV
- Lifestyle-Appli Books
- Templates Flash(R)
- Main Menu Gamendeco
- Mini Tool Other Documents
- Memory Status

#### **9 Media Player**

Play audio and video files (Chapter 8).

Audio

- Videos
- Streaming

### **1DTV**

Watch and record Digital TV broadcasts (Chapter 6).

- Watch TV
- Program Guide

TV Links

- TV Player
- Output Setting
- Image Quality
- First View

#### (1)Phone Book

Save and access Phone Book information (Chapter 4).

- My Details
- Phone Book
- New Entry
- Call Log • SI Addr Book
- Group Settings

• Memory Status

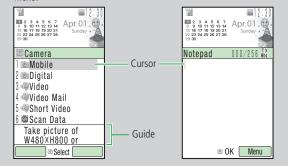
### **®Settings**

Modify and confirm handset settings (Chapters 12, 13).

- Sounds
- Display Phone Settings Security
- Call Settings
- Connectivity
- Idle Screen
- Priority

#### Tip

- About the items shown after you select an item in the Main menu, the icons and the order of appearance are partly different in Icon View and in Tab View (right).
- You can view the default settings of each item in Default Settings (page 24-2).
- The cursor appears as "|" or " " when entering text, or " in the menu, etc.
- Items selected by the cursor are displayed in the guide display of the menu.



### Main Menu View

Change Main menu view from Icon View (default) to Tab View. In Tab View, sub menus appear when a tab is selected.

# 1 In Standby, press → (Switch)

● To return to Icon View, press 🖾 (Switch) in Tab View.

## **2** Select an item

Sub menu items appear to the right. To select an item, press or and scroll to the item.



Tab View

#### Tip

From the Tab View, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 Change Order (page 1-19) / Gamendeco (page 12-6) / Reset Setting

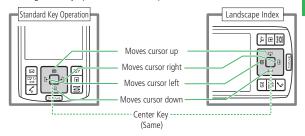
# Landscape Index

Press  $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$  in Standby to open Landscape Index. Access the following functions from Landscape Index.



- 1) One Seg Digital TV (Chapter 6)
- 2 PC Site Browser (page 18-4)
- ③ Digital Camera (page 7-6)
- 4 Video (page 7-11)
- ⑤ Navi Appli (page 21-1)
- 6 S! Appli Library (page 19-2)
- 7 Pictures (page 10-3)
- ® Videos (page 10-5)

Navigation Key operation in Landscape Index is as follows.



#### **Customize Main Menu**

Customize Main Menu design (icons, text color, focus, etc.).

# 1 In Standby, press

### **Changing the Order of Items**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Change Order $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

- →Select a position → ■
- To restore to default order, select *Reset Order*.

### **Changing Icons and Wallpaper**

- Original Default theme.
- **Phone Memory** Select a theme from Data Folder.
- *Options* Separately select themes for icons and wallpaper.

  To change text color, press ☑ (Menu)→*Font Color*→ →

  Select a color→ ■

To change Wallpaper, press  $\ liveta$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Wallpaper $\rightarrow$  $\ liveta$   $\rightarrow$ Phone Memory/Memory Card $\rightarrow$  $\ liveta$   $\rightarrow$ Select a wallpaper

To change icons, select an item→ ☑ (Menu)→Icons→ ■ → Phone Memory/Memory Card → ■ → Select a file → ■

To change focus, press ☑ (Menu)→Highlight → ■ → Select a pattern → ■

To reset icons and Wallpaper, press ☑ (Menu)→Reset Options→

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Select Menu Items Using Keypad

Enter the menu number on handset keypad ( - - - - - - , + - ) for direct access to that menu.



The number corresponding to the keypad

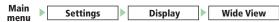
### Mini Tool

Set Mini Tool to appear on Display (see below). Select Calendar, Notepad, animation file or other information to appear on Mini Tool.



### **Configuring Mini Tool Settings**

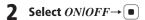
When **OFF** is selected for the Wide View setting, Mini Tool is displayed in Standby and in the mail message input/browsing window.



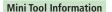
**1** Select the display→ ■

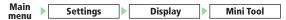
# Activating/Canceling All

Press  $\square$  (All) $\rightarrow$ Wide View ON/Wide View OFF $\rightarrow$  $\blacksquare$ 



 If you change the *IdleScreen* setting, you also will need to reconfigure the wallpaper setting.





Select *Mini Tool*→

#### **To Set Default Content**

Select **Preset**→ (twice)

#### **To Select Content**

Select **Phone Memory**  $\longrightarrow$  Select item  $\longrightarrow$  (twice)

### **Setting Animation**



- Select *Mini Photo→*
- **2** Select *Image* → •

# **3** Select *Images List*, *Select Folder* or *Preset* → ■

### **Images List**

- Select a List then press and ☒ (Set).

#### Select Folder

Select a folder then press and (Set). Images saved in the selected folder are used for the animation. If the selected folder is locked (Security Lock, page 10-15), you must enter Security Code (See following section).

#### **Preset**

Press (Set) to set the preinstalled animation.

#### Tip

 To select downloaded content saved in the *Mini Photo* folder (Data Folder), perform the following after Step 1:

Select Design o o o o o o Select item o o (Set)

If you select **Preset** after selecting **Design**, the same preinstalled animation will be set as in Step 3.

# **Codes**

Your security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code are required for some functions and settings.

- Write down security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code. If those codes are lost, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- Do not reveal your security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

### **Security Code**

Security Code is a four-digit number. It is required to use various functions. Your security code can be changed (page 13-1). The default setting is "9999".

### **Center Access Code**

Center Access Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to perform optional service operations from a fixed-line phone or to subscribe to fee-based content on the Internet.

# Call Barring Service Code

Call Barring Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to set call barring. The code can be changed (page 16-8).

# Internet Security Code

Internet Security Code is required to set Internet security. The code can be changed (page 13-10).

# **Making a Call**

# 1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press 🖊

The call is made.

- Confirm that the signal level is sufficient before making a call (page 1-6).
- Include the area code for all numbers.
- When making a call to mobile, car, or PHS phones, enter all the digits of the other party's phone number starting with "0".
- Press ≅ or press and hold OUTFLAKE to delete the entire number and return to Standby. Press OUTFLAKE to delete the last number entered.
- When the line is busy, the busy tone will be heard. Press [ , and call again after a while.

# **2** Press 🛎 to end the call

#### Note

- Antenna is built into the handset. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if
  you touch or cover the portion of the body containing the internal
  antenna (page 1-5). In particular, do not affix things like stickers onto
  this portion of the body. Doing so may prevent you from making/
  receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- The TV rod antenna is only for receiving television signals. Retract the antenna when TV is not activated.
- Do not wrap the Stereo Earphone (optional) or audio remote control with microphone (optional) around the handset. Bringing the Stereo Earphone close to the internal antenna may cause noise.
- The orientation and location of the handset may affect signal strength.
- When Cost Limit (page 2-9) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

### Tip

 In Standby, enter a number and press (Menu) to perform the following:

Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-1) / Circle Talk (page 20-12) / Intl. Calls (page 2-2) / Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9) / Pause (page 14-36) / Manual Hyphen (enter a "-") / Hide My ID (page 12-13) / Show My ID (page 12-13)

- During calls, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   End Call | Hold | Mute My Voice | Mute All | Phone Book (page 4-7) | Call Log | Voice Record | My Details | DTMF OFF
- You can receive a call while browsing the Web and receive mail during a call. This is called multiple connections.

### **Making International Calls**

This section explains how to make an international call from Japan.

- A separate application is required for using the international call service.
   For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33). See page 14-33 for details about the operational procedure.
- The handset does not support international roaming, so it cannot be used outside of Japan.

### Adding the International Code and Country Code

- 1 In Standby, enter a phone number→¬¬ (Menu)
  →Intl. Calls→¬□
- **2** Select a country→
  - "+" and the country code are added before the phone number.
- **3** Press ✓

Tip

• An alternative way to enter the international code "+" is to press \( \sigma\) in Standby and press and hold \( \subseteq \subsete \sigma\). Then enter the country code.

### **Caller ID**

Caller ID displays the caller's phone number on the receiver's handset. Set your handset to show or hide your handset number for outgoing calls (page 12-13).

# Redialing

Make calls from Dialed Number. Information such as the phone number, date and time you called is recorded for up to 20 as dialed calls.

# 📘 In Standby, press 🕣

Dialed numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book

- 2 Select a record and press 🖊
  - Press and hold (\*) to make a Circle Talk call.
- **3** Press **=** to end the call

Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-10) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- All the calls may not be saved to the call log depending on the circumstance
- From Dialed Number, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following:
   Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-1) / Circle Talk (page 20-12) / Intl.
   Calls (left) / Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9) / To Phone Book (page 4-2) / Add to List (page 12-12) / Delete / Hide My ID (page 12-13) / Show My ID (page 12-13) / Call Log Lock (page 2-8)
- If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to ON when Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to Hide, only the phone number is displayed on dialed numbers.

# **Answering a Call**

- 1 Press / when a call is received
- **2** Press 🕾 to end the call

#### Tip

- Pressing also answers an incoming call.
- Besides ✓ and ●, you can also answer calls by pressing □♣-¬,
   ★ ♀ or #♠ when Any Key Answer (page 12-11) is set to ON.
- You can answer calls just by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 12-11) is set to ON.
- If you miss a call, Information Prompt (page 1-8) appears.
- If the caller's information is saved to Phone Book, the saved information (name and picture) appears when a call is received. If the caller is saved as Secret (page 4-3), only the phone number appears when Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to *Hide*.
- When you receive a call with no Caller ID, either Unavailable, Withheld, or Payphone appears.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while receiving a call, use or 1/1.
- To stop ringtone during incoming call, press and hold .

# When You Cannot Answer Immediately

# Placing an Incoming Call on Hold

Place an incoming call on hold when you are unable to answer it right away.

1 Press 🕾 when a call is received

Voice guidance in Japanese notifies the caller that you are unable to answer the call at the moment.

- Press 🖊 to answer the call
- Press 🖺 to end the call

#### Note

- Call charges apply to a caller while the caller is waiting for you to answer.
- Pressing while placing an incoming call on hold ends the incoming call that is on hold.

#### Tip

- Pressing also answers a call placed on hold.
- Besides ✓, and ॐ (for video call) you can also answer the call by pressing □.º--□..., ★ if or # when Any Key Answer (page 12-11) is set to ON.
- When you are unable to answer a call (ie: your handset is out of range, a call is in progress, etc.) divert calls to; a preset phone number (page 16-2) or Voice Mail Center (page 16-4).

# **Recording a Message to Answering Machine**

Record a caller's message to your handset when you are unable to answer a voice call. Save up to five 30-second messages to Answering Machine.

## Press and hold @UP/XED when a call is received

Outgoing message plays and recording starts.

 When recording capacity becomes full or the call ends, it stops automatically.

#### Vote

- Answering Machine is unavailable for video calls (page 5-1) and Call Waiting (page 16-5).
- When five messages are recorded, Answering Machine is disabled.
   Delete messages to activate Answering Machine.

#### Tip

- Press and hold to record a message.
- To answer a call while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, press
- To adjust the volume while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, use .

# **Playing Recorded Messages**

Main menu Tools Ans Machine

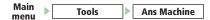
- **1** Select *Recordings* → ■
- **2** Select a message→■

" | indicates unchecked messages, and " | indicates checked messages.

#### Tip

• Press OUP/XE in Standby to view recorded messages.

# **Deleting Recorded Messages**



- **1** Select *Recordings* →
- 2 Select a message  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES$

# **Rejecting a Call**

1 Press 🗹 (Reject) when a call is received

#### Tip

- When you reject an incoming call received during a call with the Call
  Waiting (page 16-5) service activated, press (Menu) and select
  Reject Call.
- By activating Call Barring (page 12-12), you can reject all incoming calls automatically.

# **Engaged Call Operations**

# **Adjusting Earpiece Volume**

**1** Use 🚺 during a call

The current setting appears.

**2** Use 🐧 to adjust the earpiece volume

#### Tip

- You can adjust the earpiece volume by pressing for voluming a call.
- Even if the volume is changed during a call it returns to its original setting when the call ends.

## **Recording Other Party's Voice**

Voice Record allows you to record the other party's voice during a call. Maximum recording time is 60 seconds.

- **1** During a call, press  $\boxed{}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Voice Record $\rightarrow$ 
  - Recording stops when the maximum time is reached or the call ends.
     To stop recording manually, press

#### Tip

- The recording is automatically saved to the Ring Song · Tone folder (page 10-1).
- For details on playing Voice Record recordings, see page 14-25.
- Voice Record is unavailable during a handsfree call, using a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> compatible device.

#### **Number Memo**

Use the keypad to take a memo of a phone number or other number during a voice or video call. After the call ends, you can save the number to Phone Book or use it to make a call. You can store up to five number memos.

# Press the keys on the keypad during a call

After the call ends, the number memo is automatically saved.

- You can enter a total of up to 32 numbers and symbols (¥, #, +, -, P).
- See page 14-25 for details on how to view a number memo.

#### Tip

- Number Memo is available when making video calls, too.
- Alternatively, press the keys on the keypad during a call, press (Menu) and select *Number Memo* to save a number memo.

### Switching to Handsfree Operation

Switching to the handsfree operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

# **1** Press ☑ (♠) during a call

● To cancel the handsfree operation, press 🖾 (🔌).

#### Tip

 During a handsfree call, the other party's voice sounds from only one of the speakers.

# **Call Log**

The last 20 dialed numbers and received calls including Circle Talk calls can be viewed.

### **Viewing Dialed Numbers**

# 1 In Standby, press 🕣

- To switch from the Dialed Number window to the Received Call window, press □ or □
- To switch between Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log, press ( ﴿ / ﴿ ).
- In Dialed Number, the icons shown below appear.
  - lndicates outgoing voice calls.
  - Indicates outgoing video calls.
- For Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.
  - lndicates outgoing individual Circle Talk calls.
  - 🕍 Indicates outgoing group Circle Talk calls.

#### Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-10) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from *Phone Book* in the Main menu (page 1-16).
- Select a number from call log and press to make a voice call or and to make a video call.
- Select an entry from call log and press to make a Circle Talk call (page 20-12).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- When there are 20 Dialed Number records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you make a call to a Phone Book entry, the name saved to Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to ON when Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to Hide, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- From Dialed Number, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following:
  Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-1) / Circle Talk (page 20-12) / Intl.
  Calls (page 2-2) / Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9) / To Phone
  Book (page 4-2) / Add to List (page 12-12) / Delete / Hide My ID
  (page 12-13) / Show My ID (page 12-13) / Call Log Lock (page 2-8)

# **Viewing Received Calls**

# In Standby, press 🕒

- To switch from the Received Call window to the Dialed Number window, press □ or □.
- To switch between received Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log, press (♣ /♣).
- In Received Call, the icons shown below appear.
  - √ Received Voice/Video calls
  - √ Missed Voice/Video calls
  - 🎳 / 👺 Rejected Voice/Video calls
  - # / Rejected Voice/Video calls with no Caller ID
    - Received Voice calls from public phones
- For received Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.
  - Received Circle Talk calls
  - Missed Circle Talk calls
  - Rejected Circle Talk calls
  - Rejected Circle Talk calls with no Caller ID

#### Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-10) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from *Phone Book* in the Main menu (page 1-16).
- Select an entry from call log and press to make a Circle Talk call (page 20-12).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Received Call record.
- When there are 20 Received Call records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you receive a call from a Phone Book entry, the name saved to
  Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you receive a call from a
  Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to ON when Secret
  Mode (page 13-5) is set to Hide, however, only the phone number is
  displayed.

# **Setting Call Log Lock**

Set Call Log Lock to require Security Code for accessing Call Log (including Circle Talk Call Log).

- In Standby, press •□/□→▽ (Menu)→Call Log

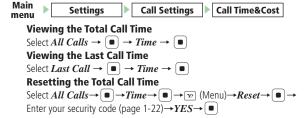
  Lock→■
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select  $Lock|Unlock \rightarrow \blacksquare$

#### Tip

• Call Log Lock can be set even when the Circle Talk Call Log is displayed.

### **Viewing Call Time**

Check the previous or total call time.



#### Note

- The displayed call time serves as a guide only.
- The total call time does not include mail communications, Web browsing, and Circle Talk connection and talking time.
- Up to 277 hours 46 minutes and 39 seconds can be displayed for the total call time.

### **Viewing Call Costs**

View the cost for the last call or the total cost for all calls. The data for the total cost is saved to the USIM card.

Main Call Settings Settinas **Call Time&Cost** menu **Viewing the Last Call Cost** Select Last Call  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Cost  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Viewing the Total Call Cost Select All Calls  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Cost  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Resetting the Total Call Cost Enter your PIN2 (page 1-3)  $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow$ **Setting the Currency** Select  $Cost\ Unit \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$  Enter your PIN2 (page 1-3)  $\rightarrow$  Enter a currency (three characters)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ Enter a rate  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ **Setting Call Cost Display** 

Select Cost Display  $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- The displayed call cost serves as a guide only and may differ from the actual call cost billed.
- Sum of charges appears for Multiparty Call (page 16-6).
- The total call cost does not include mail communication and Web browsing charges, and the charge for the number of remarks made in Circle Talk sessions.
- When you make an international call, the call cost is not displayed.

# **Setting Cost Limit**

Set maximum cost for your monthly voice/video calls.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Call Settings 
■ Call Time&Cost

- **1** Select *Cost Limit*→
  - If Cost Limit has been set, you can view the balance.
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Set Max Limit $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- 3 Enter your PIN2 (page 1-3)→ (twice)→Enter the maximum cost limit→

#### Note

 You cannot make voice and video calls if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit. A call will be disconnected if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit during the call.

# Owner Information

Display My Details (page 4-10) such as the phone number and email address of your handset.

Main menu ▶

Phone Book

**1** Select My  $Details \rightarrow \bullet$ 

The owner information appears.

# **Viewing Owner Information during a Call**

**1** During a call, press  $\mathbf{v}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow My$  Details $\rightarrow \mathbf{\bullet}$ 

# **Setting/Canceling Manner Mode**

Set Mode Settings to Silent to avoid disturbing others in public areas. When manner mode is set, "" appears.

- Turn the handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- In airplanes, turn off your handset so that it does not disturb flight safety.
- In such places as hospitals and research institutes, where no use of cell phones is allowed, turn off your handset so that it does not affect precision apparatuses.
- In such quite places as restaurants and hotel lobbies, be careful so that your talking voice does not bother others around you.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

### **Activating Manner Mode**

1 In Standby, press and hold #20

Manner mode is set.

### **Canceling Manner Mode**

Manner mode is canceled.

#### Note

- Shutter click and recording start/end tone sound even in manner mode.
- If you set your answer status for Circle Talk to Auto Join in My Status (pages 20-4, 20-6), then you are automatically connected to Circle Talk, so you hear the other party's voice from the speaker even if manner mode is set.

### Tip

 Vibration and alarm settings in manner mode (page 12-2) can be changed.

# **Setting/Canceling Offline Mode**

Use offline mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In offline mode, incoming/outgoing calls and network services, such as transmission of S! Mail/SMS are blocked.

When offline mode is set to ON, the signal strength indicator changes to " $\mathbb{Z}$ ".



#### Note

- When offline mode is set to ON, incoming calls are blocked. Make sure
  offline mode is set to OFF if you need to use your handset as usual.
- Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) are not possible when offline mode is set to ON.
- Bluetooth® and Infrared transfer unavailable when Offline Mode is *ON*.

# **About Emergency Calls**

Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast quard)) are available, even when the following restrictions are set.

- Password Lock (page 13-2)
- Call Barring (page 16-7)

#### Note

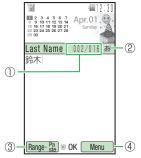
 If a video call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.

# **About Text Entry**

Enter hiragana, katakana, kanji, alphanumerics, symbols, pictographs and emoticons.

There are four kinds of input methods: Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-8), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in the text entry window using Standard mode.

# **Text Entry Window**



- ① Number of characters entered/Maximum number of characters allowed is displayed. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the function.
- 2 Indicates the current entry mode.
- ③ Selects the range of text.
  - By pressing when a text range is selected, you can perform operations such as copying or saving the selected text (pages 3-11, 3-12).
- ④ By pressing ☑ (Menu), you can perform operations such as arranging or editing mail text (pages 3-12, 17-6).

# **Switching Text Entry Modes**

- 1 In a text entry window, press 🗝
  - Unavailable text entry modes are not displayed.
- **2** Select an input mode→•

Input mode is switched.

#### Input Mode Icons

- 🐻 : Kanji (hiragana)
- : Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- 3 : Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- A : Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- : Double-byte numbers
- **1** : Single-byte numbers

**URL**: Enter addresses from the address library (page 3-8).

**Pict**: Enter pictographs.

(^-^): Enter emoticons.

My Pict: Enter pictographs in My Pictograms folder.

#### Tip

 In Input Method (page 3-15), you can switch between Standard mode, Beeper mode, T9 mode, and Multi-tap mode. The above icons are displayed in Standard Mode. If you switch to Beeper Mode, the icon changes from " # " to " # ".

# Key Assignment (Standard Mode)

Input Mode Key	Kanji/Hiragana* (Double-byte)	Katakana (Single-byte)	Upper case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Lower case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Numbers (Double & Single-byte)
[ .8 .8	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオアイウエオ	.@1	.@1	1
□ <sup>ħ)</sup>	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABC2	abc2	2
3 cer	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEF3	def3	3
U tc □H	たちつてとっ	タチツテトツ	GHI4	ghi4	4
5 KL	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKL5	jkl5	5
6 <sub>MN0</sub>	はひふへほ	ハヒフへホ	MN06	mno6	6
□.s.	まみむめも	ZEVXE	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
₽ <sup>P</sup>	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUV8	tuv8	8
9,5	らりるれろ	םטוועל	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
+	わをんー、。	ワヲン- 、。	~/?!0	~/?!0	0
<b>★</b> ☆	Pictographs, Emoticons, Custom, * (dakuten), * (handakuten), — (cho-on), 、 (touten), 。 (kuten)	" (dakuten), " (handakuten), — (cho-on), 、 (touten), 。 (kuten)	Pictographs, Em	Pictographs, Emoticons, Custom	
# A/a	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alpha Toggle	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL	
	Determine entered text/finish text entry Finish text ent				
•••	Move cursor, Insert line breaks by pressing  Move up and down the list of conversion  predictions with	and down the list of conversion Move cursor Inspect line broads by program			
(クリア/メモ)	Delete entered text (page 3-12)				
© U X₹	Displa		_		
* 14/1 1	0 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11	. 12 1.0	" / 1 \		

<sup>\*</sup> While assigning a reading in hiragana to an entry in the user dictionary (page 3-11), you can enter only double-byte hiragana and " — " (cho-on).

# **Entering Characters**

# Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana

Enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode, and it converts to kanji, etc. Example: Entering *須々木* 

- 1 In a text entry window, enter すずき
  - lacktriangle Press lacktriangle (three times)  $\rightarrow$  lacktriangle  $\rightarrow$  lacktriangle (three times)  $\rightarrow$  lacktriangle  $\rightarrow$  lacktriangle (twice).
- 2 Press 😱
  - To exit the list and enter characters after すずき , press ஹೂக.



**3** Use • to select 須々木→ ■

須々木 is determined.

To finish text entry, pressafter accepting entered text.

#### Tip

• In kanji (hiragana) entry mode, entered text is converted in segments of words, phrases, and clauses. When it is not converted to your target kanji, change the range of selected text by using ② and then try again by pressing ② . For example, if you enter こみ やまさとし and convert by pressing ② . 小 宮山聡 is displayed. If you want to segment it into こみや and まさとし, press ② ま as shown on the screen on the right, select こみや with the cursor, and select your target kanji from the list of conversion predictions by pressing ② .



If you press \* after a character to which " " (dakuten) and " " (handakuten) cannot be added while converting text, " — " (cho-on), " " (touten) and " " (kuten) are displayed.

## Lower Case (a, ⊃ etc.)

In all the input modes except Numeric, you can change the case of a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Changing あ to lower case

1 In a text entry window, press T. 5 a is entered

2 Press #A/B → ■

ぁ is determined.

#### Adding " or "

In kanji (hiragana) entry mode and single-byte katakana entry mode, you can add " " " (dakuten) and " " " (handakuten) to a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only). Example: Entering  $\mathcal{D}^{r}$ 

1 In a text entry window, press 2.20

か is entered

2 Press ★ Îsê → ●

カ is determined.

● With characters like / to which both " " " (dakuten) and " " (handakuten) can be added, you can switch between " " " and " " " by pressing (★ : ).

#### Tip

When the cursor is on a character to which " " (dakuten) and " " (handakuten) cannot be added, or when the cursor is to the right of a character (unconverted), you can enter " — " (cho-on), " " (touten) and " " (kuten) by pressing \* ".

#### **Phonetic Conversion**

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji. Example: Entering (はずずき)

- 1 In a text entry window, enter すずき
- 2 Press (twice)

The kanji candidate is displayed.

- ●When *単漢候補* is not displayed in a text entry window, the word cannot be converted with phonetic conversion.
- **3** Select **#**→

艫 is determined.

#### Tip

Reading	)	Characters (symbols)				
いっぱ	Ь	#&X@§☆, etc. These are included also in きごう.				
がくじゅ	つ	$+-\pm imes$ $\div$ = , etc. These are included also in きごう.				
かっ	Z	''""(), etc. These are included also in きごう.				
ぎりし	ゃ	АВГ $\alpha\beta\gamma$ , etc.				
たん	い	゜′″℃¥\$, etc. These are included also in きごう.				
ろ し	あ	АБВабв, etc.				
きじゅ	つ	、。, . · :, etc. These are included also in きごう.				
きご	う	、。, . · : , etc.				
けいせ	Ь	—   г¬				

## **Proper Name Conversion**

In Proper Name Conversion, predictions appear as you enter each character. Example: Entering # 5% (Akari)

- **1** In a text entry window, enter あかり (Akari)→ → Use • to select 名前変換 (Name Conversion) → •
- **2** Select **#** (A)→ •

- 3 Select **香** (ka)→

  ■
- 4 Select \*\pi (ri)→ (twice)

## Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion

Enter alphanumerics and katakana in kanji (hiragana) entry mode. Example: Entering *TOM* (single-byte) in kanji (hiragana) entry mode

- In a text entry window, press the key to which the character is assigned
  - Press 🖭 (once) → 🗔 (three times) → 🗀 → 👼 (once) + ୬ ふは is entered.
- **2** Press 

  ☐ (Kana)

The conversion candidates of the roman characters and katakana are displayed.

- By pressing (Kana)/ਓ (Num.), you can switch between roman character/katakana conversion and number conversion.
- **3** Press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$  to select TOM (single-byte)  $\rightarrow$

**TOM** (single-byte) is determined.

Tip

When you want to enter date and time, you can do so in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. For example, if you enter あかさわ by pressing 「まこう」 and then press (Num.), 12/30 or 12:30 are displayed.

## **Displaying Characters in Opposite Order**

In all the input modes except numeric, you can display unconverted characters on the cursor in the opposite order from the one on the Key assignments chart (page 3-2) by pressing .

Example: Entering the character assigned to Executive Example:

Press 2.2

Press after pressing after

#### Symbols

Double-byte and single-byte symbols can be entered.

1 In a text entry window, press ###

The double-byte symbol list is displayed.

**2** Select a symbol→**■** 

The selected symbol is entered and the symbol list disappears.

 To enter symbols continuously from the symbol window, select symbols and press

#### Tip

 Symbols that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the symbol window. You can enter symbols by selecting from the log area, too.

#### **Alphanumerics**

1 In a text entry window, press ## (twice)

The double-byte alphanumeric list is displayed.

**2** Select a number or letter→

Repeat to enter another letter.

## **Pictographs**

See page 24-15 for information about the pictographs that can be entered.

1 In a text entry window, press \*\*\*

The pictograph list is displayed.

• You may be unable to enter pictographs depending on the function.

**2** Select a pictograph→

The selected pictograph is entered and the pictograph list disappears.

● To enter pictographs continuously from the pictograph window, select pictographs and press .

#### Tip

- Pictographs that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the pictograph window. You can enter pictographs by selecting from the log area, too.
- You can enter pictographs by pressing → Pict in a text entry window, too.
- When you convert by pressing , pictographs may appear in the list of conversion predictions.

#### **Emoticons**

1 In a text entry window, press ★ 🖫 (twice)

The emoticon list is displayed.

- The number of times \*\* is pressed differs depending on the function.
- **2** Select an emoticon→

The selected emoticon is entered and the emoticon list disappears.

 To enter emoticons continuously from the emoticon window, select emoticons and press (Paper).

#### Tip

- When you enter かお and convert it by pressing 😱, twelve different emoticons appear in the list of conversion predictions.

## **Space**

1 In a text entry window, press 🕒

A space is entered.

 To enter spaces before converted character, select spaces from the symbol window (page 3-6).

## Line Break

1 In a text entry window, enter text and convert

Press at a position where you want to insert a line break

" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

 You may not be able to enter a line break according to the text entry window.

#### Mail & Web Extensions

Enter part of an email address and URL easily using the address library. Example: Entering .co.jp, which is part of an email address

**1** In a text entry window, press → URL → ■

The address library is displayed.

2 Select  $.co.jp \rightarrow \bullet$  . .co.jp is entered.

#### Beeper Mode

Switch the input method (page 3-15) to Beeper mode. When entering text, enter two digits to make one character. The combinations are as follows:

						Press	next				
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	い	う	え	お	А	В	С	D	Е
	2	か	き	<	け	2	F	G	Н	- 1	J
	3	さ	U	す	せ	そ	Κ	L	М	Ν	0
<b></b>	4	た	ち	つ	て	٢	Р	Q	R	S	Т
firs	5	な	ľ	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	Χ	Υ
Press first	6	は	ひ	131	^	ほ	Z	?	!	_	/
_	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	X	#			
	9	5	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	h	"	۰	6	7	8	9	0

- indicates upper and lower case are available. Press 

  immediately after character entry.
- When you enter "♠" and "♠", all the characters will be single-byte.
- When you enter "♠", "♠", "♣" and "♣", hiragana will turn to katakana.
- When you enter "a" and "a", the characters will be in lower case.

Example: Entering よしお

1 In a text entry window, press □♣5₺→□♣2₺→

[ | # | 5 # | → | ■

よしお is determined.

# **Text Conversion Functions**

The handset is equipped with MobileRUPO, Toshiba's kana-kanji conversion engine. MobileRUPO uses Al conversion, which predicts appropriate kanji from context (for example, 本を買う and 犬を飼う) and converts accordingly. Also, by using word predictions (below), you can enter a long mail message in a short time. If you save a kanji with an exceptional reading or



\* MobileRUPO is a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

frequently used abbreviations to the user dictionary (page 3-11), you can call them up the next time you enter text.

## **Using Word Predictions**

There are two kinds of word predictions, conversion predictions and phrase predictions. Conversion predictions display the list of conversion predictions based on characters entered in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. Phrase predictions learn phrases from entered paragraphs so that the next time you enter the first part of the phrase, the list of conversion predictions for the following phrase is displayed. By using word predictions, you can enter target phrases easily and quickly.

The more you use word predictions, the more they improve as a predictive dictionary. And the accuracy of conversion predictions will improve. You can also disable word predictions or reset the predictive dictionary to the initial state (page 3-15).

#### **Conversion Prediction**

Example: Entering お父さん

1 In a text entry window, press

1.3 (five times)→

1.3 (five times)

The conversion candidates predicted from おと are displayed in the Predict area.



**2** Press ・ Use ・ to select お父さん→ ●

お父さん is determined

#### **Phrase Prediction**

Example: Entering the same phrase 渋谷でライブ that you have entered before

1 In a text entry window, enter  $\iota$ 

渋谷 is displayed in the Predict area.

**2** Press ♀→Use • to select 滋谷→ •

渋谷 is determined.  $\overline{C}$  is displayed in the Predict area.



3 Press ♀→Use ♣ to select で
→●

 $\mathcal{T}$  is determined.  $\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}$  is displayed in the Predict area.



**4** Press ・ Use ・ to select ライブ→ ■

ライブ is determined.

# Adding a Word to the User Dictionary

The user dictionary lets you save kanji with an exceptional reading or frequently used abbreviations up to 100 entries. To use words saved in the user dictionary, enter a reading that you saved and convert in a text entry window.

1 In a text entry window, press ☞ (Menu)→

Customize→ ■ → Word List→ ■ → To Word List

→ ■

**2** Select  $Word \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  the word  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

- You can enter up to 12 characters.
- Symbols and pictographs can also be registered.
- **3** Select  $Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  the reading  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - You can enter up to eight characters.
  - Enter the reading in double-byte hiragana.
- 4 Press 🖅 (OK)

Tip

You can save up to four entries with the same reading.

## Saving to User Dictionary during Text Entry

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range →
  - You can enter up to 12 characters.
  - Symbols and pictographs can also be registered.
- **3** Select *To Word List*→

A window appears where you can save the selected words to the user dictionary.

- **4** Select  $Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  the reading  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **5** Press **№** (OK)

## **Editing Saved Words**

- 1 In a text entry window, press  $\checkmark$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Customize  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Word List  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Edit Word  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- 2 Select a word→ (Edit)→Select the word/reading→ Edit the word/reading→ Edit the word/reading
- **3** Press **№** (OK)

# **Editing Text**

Text being entered in a text entry window can be edited. Text data saved on the clipboard (right) can be pasted in a text entry window.

# **Editing Entered Text**

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the left of the character you want to delete→ ஹ戸/メਞ₺

The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

To delete all the characters to the right of the cursor, press and hold

**2** Enter a correct character

#### Tip

- When @yzyxe is pressed when the cursor is at the end of a line of text, the last character is deleted. At this time, press and hold @yzyxe to delete all text.

# Copy/Cut/Paste

The clipboard is useful for text editing. Copied or cut words can temporarily be saved to the clipboard. The clipboard lets you copy or cut selected words or pictographs and paste them at the cursor position in a text entry window.

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ 

  (Range · paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■
- **3** Select *Cut*/*Copy*→ ■

The selected range of the characters are stored on the clipboard.

Position the cursor→ (Range · paste) → Paste → Select the item from the clipboard →

#### Tip

- Up to 20 of the most recent items can be saved to the clipboard.

#### Undo

During text input, you can undo operations.

#### Note

• You cannot undo converted (page 3-14) or replaced (page 3-15) text.

#### Insert

Select information from Notepad (page 14-8) or Phone Book (page 4-2) and insert it during text entry. You can also insert a signature (page 17-22) in an S! Mail or SMS message.

- 1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→Insert
  → ■
- **2** Select an item to be quoted

#### **Phone Book**

Select **Phone Book** → ■ → Select a Phone Book entry → ■ → Select an item → ■

# **Information Saved to My Details**

Select My  $Details \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Phrases**

Select *Phrases*→ ■ → Select a phrase → ■

#### **Emoticon**

Select  $Emoticon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select a category of the emoticon  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select an emoticon  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ 

Signature in an S! Mail/SMS

Select Signature  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Signature 1/Signature 2 $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Notepad

Select *Notepad*→ ■ → Select a notepad → ■

#### Message

Select  $Message Box \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a$   $message \rightarrow \blacksquare \blacksquare$ 

# **URL History**

Select *URL History*→ ■→Select a URL→ ■

#### Note

• Some items may not be inserted depending on the operating situation.

#### **Additional Functions**

#### Saving to Notepad

Save selected text in a text entry window to Notepad (page 14-8).

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)

2 Select *Start* → ■ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■

**3** Select *To Notepad*→ ■ → Select a notepad → ■

 If you save to a Notepad with a saved entry, it will be overwritten with the new entry.

# Saving to Phone Book

Save a selected phone number or email address in a text entry window to Phone Book. If a selected item is just numbers, it will be saved to **Phone Number**, and if it is single-byte alphanumerics, hyphens, or underbars containing a single "@", it will be saved to **Email**.

• For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)

2 Select Start → ■ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■

**3** Select *To Phone Book* $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$ *Add New|Add* $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$ 

#### Note

• If a selected item contains characters or symbols that cannot be saved to Phone Book, it won't be saved to Phone Book.

#### Tip

 Even if selected numbers contain "\pm\#/P-+()" in between, they will be recognized as a telephone number. However, "/()" will be omitted when they are saved.

# **Replacing Previously Converted Text**

Select previously converted text and replace it. However, kanji and pictographs cannot be replaced collectively.

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ 

(Range · paste)

2 Select Start → ■ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■

**3** Select *Convert*→

#### Converting Hiragana to Kanji

Select  $Kana/Kanji \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select the conversion candidates  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

## **Convert All into Full Width**

Select *Full Width*→

#### **Convert All into Half Width**

Select *Half Width*→

# **Convert All into Upper Case**

Select *Upper Case*→

## **Convert All into Lower Case**

Select *Lower Case*→

## Replacing Text with Text Saved to the Clipboard

Replace selected text with text saved to the clipboard (page 3-12).

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■
- **3** Select *Replace* → → Select a character to replace from the clipboard → ■

## Deleting

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)
- 2 Select Start→ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●
- **3** Select *Delete*→

# Resetting a Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary

Reset what the dictionaries learned in Word Predictions (page 3-9) to the initial state.

1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

Customize→ ■ → Reset Learned→ ■

**2** Select  $Prediction|Conversion \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## **Setting Word Predictions**

Set whether to use Word Predictions (page 3-9) or not.

- 1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

  Customize→ → Prediction→ → Predict Textl

  Phrase→ ■
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \boxed{\blacksquare}$

#### **Setting the Input Method**

Select input method for entering text from Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-8), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode.

- T9 mode: Each press of a key narrows down word predictions. Select from the predictions list.
- Multi-tap mode: Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Each press
  of the key cycles through the characters assigned to that key.
- 1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

  Customize→ □ → Input Method → □
- **2** Select Standard|Beeper|T9|Multi-tap→
  ■

# **Changing the Font Size**

The font size displayed in a text entry window can be changed.

- In a text entry window, press v (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Customize* $\rightarrow$  v  $\rightarrow$  *Font Size* $\rightarrow$  v
- **2** Select a font size→

## **Custom Window**

Save frequently used symbols and pictographs to the custom window and enter them from there easily.

- **1** In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→
  Customize→ → Custom Window → ■
- 2 Select Add to Window → → Enter symbols and pictographs → ■

  Setting Display of the Custom Window |
  Select Display → → Display/Do not Display → ■

## **Creating Original Emoticons**

- 1 In a text entry window, press  $\stackrel{\tiny \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc}{\longrightarrow} (^{-}) \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ User Created  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Select the item not registered→ (Edit)→Create an emoticon→ (twice)

# **Saving to Phone Book**

Your handset can save up to 1,000 Phone Book entries. You can also save Phone Book entries to the USIM card and a memory card. The maximum number of entries you can save depends on the capacity of the USIM card or memory card.

#### **Back-up Important Information**

When the battery pack is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

		Support	ed/Not Su	pported
Item	Description	Phone Memory	Memory Card	USIM Card
Name/ Last Name	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select	C	0	)
Name/ First Name	Name when saving to USIM card.)			
Reading- Last	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select <b>Reading</b> when saving to USIM	0	0	
Reading- First	card.)			)
Memory Number	A four-digit number (Entry Number)	0	0	0
Phone Number	Enter up to five numbers on Phone Memory/one on USIM card (32 digits each).	0	0	0

		Supported/Not Supported				
Item	Description	Phone Memory	Memory Card	USIM Card		
Email	Enter up to five addresses on Phone Memory (128 single-byte alphanumerics each) / one on USIM card (60 single-byte alphanumerics).	0	0	0		
Address	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/number (64 characters).	0	0	-		
Job Title	Enter up to 32 characters.	0	0	_		
Company	Enter up to 32 characters.	0	0	_		
Birthday	Enter birth date.	0	0	_		
URL	Enter up to 128 bytes.	0	0	_		
Group	Entries can be sorted into groups.	0	0	0		
Picture	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/messages.	0	-	_		
Options	<b>ptions</b> Set external light, ringtone, secret setting, etc. individually for each Phone Book entry.			_		
Location	ation Set and display location information.		_	_		
Note	Enter up to 256 characters.	0	_	_		

# Adding a New Entry

Enter a name, phone number and email address. Storage place of Phone Book entries can be specified beforehand (page 4-11).

Main

Phone Book

**1** Select *New Entry*→

# Entering a Name

Select  $Name \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Last \ Name / First \ Name \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ Last \ Name / First \ Name \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxdot \ (OK)$ 

 Characters entered for name (reading for kanji) appear. To correct reading, select Reading-Last/Reading-First.

## **Entering Phone Numbers**

Select **Phone Number** → ■→Enter a phone number → ■ → Select a phone number type → ■

● To enter a manual hyphen "-" or a pause "P" (page 14-36), press 
☑ (Menu) while entering a phone number and select *Manual Hyphen/Pause(P)*.

## **Entering Email Addresses**

Select  $Email \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$  Enter an email address  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$  Select an email type  $\blacksquare$ 

Press (OK)

#### Note

 When you save to USIM Phone Book (page 4-11), enter both the first name and last name in the Name field.

#### Tip

- You can also save a new entry in the following method:
   In Standby, press ♀ ➡ ☒ (Create)
- To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.
- If the same name as you enter has already been saved in the existing Phone Book, pressing (OK) displays a message asking whether to overwrite the name. Select NO to save as a new entry.

# **Setting a Picture**

Main menu Phone Book

**1** Select *New Entry*→

## **Capturing New Image**

Select  $Picture \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Take \ Picture \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Take \ a \ picture \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

• For details on taking pictures, see page 7-6.

# **Selecting from Data Folder**

Select *Picture*→ ■→*Phone Memory/Memory Card*→ ■→ *Pictures/Digital Camera*→ ■→Select a picture→ ■

• If the selected picture is too large, change the size (page 7-22).

# Press (OK)

To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

#### Note

 If Property (page 10-9) is not available for forwarding, the picture file cannot be saved as Picture.

# **Setting the Ringtone & Other Options**

Main menu

Phone Book

**1** Select New Entry  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Options  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## **External Light**

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→
■→ExternalLight→■→Select a color/OFF/Same as Phone
→■

#### **Ringtone Volume**

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification  $\rightarrow$  Ringtone Vol.  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Options/Same as Phone  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## **Ringtone Pattern**

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→
■→Ringtone→■→Patterns/Melodies/Phone Memory/

Memory Card/Same as Phone→ → Select a pattern → Vibration Pattern

Select *Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification*→

■→*Vibration*→
■→Select a pattern/*OFF/Same as Phone*→
■

#### Ring Duration for Incoming Messages and Hot Status Notifications

Select  $Message/Notification \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set$   $Duration/1 \ Cycle/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$  Enter the ringing time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## **Folder for Saving Incoming Messages**

Select  $Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Message Folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select a folder/ $None \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Secret Setting**

Select  $Secret \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

 When Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to Show, an entry with Secret set to ON is displayed. " appears for the entry.

# Press ☐ (OK)

To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

#### Tin

- If you select Same as Phone, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 12-3). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 12-9).
- When you make a call to a party with Secret set to ON and Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to Hide, only the phone number is recorded in Dialed Calls.
- When you receive a call from a party with Secret set to ON and Secret Mode is set to Hide, only the phone number is displayed.

# **Setting Location Information**

Main menu Phone Book

**1** Select New Entry  $\longrightarrow$  Personal Info.  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  No Location  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**Setting Current Location Information** 

Select  $Position \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Start positioning \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare (OK)$ 

**Selecting from Location Log** 

**Selecting from Location Memos** 

Select My Locations  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select location information  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ 

Selecting from Picture File

Select My  $Pictures \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  a file with location information  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (OK)

Press ☐ (OK)

 To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

# **Setting Other Information**

Main Phone Book

**1** Select *New Entry*→

#### Address/Job Title/Company

Select **Personal Info.**  $\rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow$  Enter information  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)

#### **Birthday**

Select Personal Info. 
ightharpoonup 
ightharpoon

 Enter four digits for the year and if the month or date is a single digit prefix it with a 0.

#### URL

Select  $Personal\ Info. \longrightarrow \blacksquare \to URL \to \blacksquare \to \blacksquare$  Enter a URL  $\to \blacksquare \to \blacksquare$  select a type  $\to \blacksquare \to \blacksquare$  (OK)

#### Group

Select **No Group**  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  Select a group  $\rightarrow \square$ 

#### Note

Select  $Note \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a reminder \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Memory Number (Entry Number)**

Select the current Entry Number  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a new Entry Number  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Press (OK)

To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

#### Тір

If Storage Place (page 4-11) is set to *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can select a group from groups saved in Phone Memory. If it is set to *USIM*, you can select a group from groups saved in USIM.

# Adding an Entry from Call Log

Main menu Phone Book Call Log

**1** Select a phone number→ (Menu)→ *To Phone* 

 $Book \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Add \ New \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

 To add the phone number to an existing Phone Book entry, select Add and select the entry.

Tip

- You can add a phone number or email address from the received messages.
- After entering a phone number, you can also press to add the phone number.
- In Standby, you can also display Call Log by pressing or •.

# **Checking the Number of Phone Book Entries**

 When Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to *Hide*, the number of entries other than those with Secret set to *ON* is displayed.

Main menu Phone Book

- **1** Select *Memory Status*→
  - Press (Count) or (Rate) to switch between the number of entries and the usage rate.

# **Setting Groups**

Set the group name and icon. For each group, the external light, ringtone volume, ringtone pattern and vibration for incoming calls/messages can be set. However priority is given to the setting of each Phone Book entry.

# **Group Names and Icons**

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ Group

- Select a group→
  - Press 〒 (Menu) and select *To USIM* or *To Phone* to switch between the Phone Memory and the USIM.
- 2 Select the Group Name field→ → Enter a group name → •
- **3** Select a group icon→
- 4 Press ☑ (OK)

Tip

# Group Options Main Phone Book Group Select a group→ ■

**2** Select *Options*→

# **External Light**

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification  $\rightarrow$  ExternalLight  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select a color/OFF/Same as Phone  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

# **Ringtone Volume**

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification  $\rightarrow$  Ringtone Vol.  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Options/Same as Phone  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **Ringtone Pattern**

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→
■→Ringtone→■→Patterns/Melodies/Phone Memory/
Memory Card/Same as Phone→■→Select a pattern→■

#### **Vibration Pattern**

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→

→ Vibration→ → Select a pattern/OFF/Same as Phone

→ ■

#### Ring Duration for Incoming Messages and Hot Status Notifications

Select  $Message/Notification \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Set$   $Duration/1 \ Cycle/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ the \ ringing \ time \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Folder for Saving Incoming Messages**

Select  $Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Message Folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a folder/ $None \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**3** Press **□** (OK)

#### Tip

 While selecting a group, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the group, some items may not appear):

#### Reset/To USIM/To Phone

- While selecting Options, press (Menu) to perform the following: Reset Options
- If you select Same as Phone, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 12-3). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 12-9).

# **Using Phone Book**

1 In Standby, press 😱

 Press or or to display the previous or next row of the Japanese syllabary.

**2** Select an entry→

 Press o or o to display the previous or next entry of the same row.

# **Making a Call**

Select a phone number→✓

## Sending an S! Mail or SMS Message

Select a phone number/email address→ (Menu)→As Mail→ (■)

- For details on creating S! Mail, see page 17-4.
- For details on creating SMS, see page 17-9.

#### Tip

- In Standby, press and hold ... to ... to display the search window of the row assigned to each dial key.
- When Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to Show, an entry with Secret (page 4-3) set to ON is displayed. " appears for the entry.
- The current status (Hot Status information) is displayed for Phone Book entries that are saved to Hot Status Members List (page 20-3).
- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-10) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can also select *Phone Book* from the Main menu to display Phone Book entries.

#### Tip

- After displaying Phone Book entries, press (Menu) to perform the following:
  - Call/Intl. Calls/Search Mode/Delete/Export/Send vCard/Copy/ Move/Change View/Sort by/Hot Status/Active Window
- After displaying Phone Book entries, you can also select an entry and press to make a call. If the entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

# **Switching Phone Books**

Switch between *Phone/USIM*, *Phone Memory*, *USIM* and *Memory Card* Phone Books.

- Phone Memory Phone Book
- USIM Phone Book
- Memory Card Phone Book
- In Standby, press 😱
- 2 Press ☑ (Menu)→*Change View*→ → Select a storage place → ■

#### **Phone Book Search Modes**

Select one of the six search modes. The selected search mode is used the next time you open Phone Book.

1 In Standby, press 😱

**2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Search Mode \rightarrow$ 

By Displaying the List of Phone Book Entries (Default)
Select List View→ ■ → Select an entry→ ■

By Entering the First Character of a Reading in 1-touch (*2タッチ検索* (2-touch), if *言語選択* (Language) (page 12-10) is set to *日本語* (Japanese))

Select  $By 1-Touch \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Press a key from  $\blacksquare . \blacksquare$  to  $\blacksquare . \blacksquare$ , \* : :, or  $\blacksquare . \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select an entry  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

By Entering a Reading

Select  $By \ Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a reading  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select an entry  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

By Entering a Memory Number (Entry Number)

Select **By Memory No.**  $\rightarrow$  Enter an Entry Number  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

By Entering a Phone Number

Select  $By \ Phone \ No. \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ phone \ number \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select \ an \ entry \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Select *Group Filter*→ → Select a group → Select an entry

Tip

The keypad assignment used in 2タッチ検索 is as follows. For example, press 国歌 5里 to display the entries with reading starting from よ. To display roman characters, press 東京. To display other characters, press 東京.

			Press next					
			2	3	4	5		
	1	あ	い	ò	え	お		
	2	か	き	<	け	5		
	3	さ		す	שׁ	そ		
t	4	た	ち	n	7	٢		
Press first	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	0		
ess.	6	は	ひ	131	<	ほ		
<u> </u>	7	ま	み	む	め	も		
	8	ゃ	_	ゆ	_	よ		
	9	5	り	る	れ	ろ		
	0	わ	を	h	_	_		

 The characters in the Reading field of Phone Book are used to search an entry in 2 タッチ検索.

# **Changing the Order of Phone Book Entries**

In Standby, press  $\bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Sort by \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select *AlphabetlBirthday*→

# **Copying/Moving Phone Book Entries**

Copy or move entries between Phone Memory, Memory Card and USIM Phone Books.

1 In Standby, press 📮

**Copying/Moving One Entry** 

Select an entry  $\rightarrow \mathbf{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Copy/Move \rightarrow \mathbf{o}$   $\rightarrow One \rightarrow \mathbf{o}$ 

Copying/Moving Multiple Entries

Press  $\[ \]$  (Menu) $\$  - $\$  Copy/Move $\$   $\[ \]$  - $\$  Select Multi $\$   $\[ \]$  - $\$  Select entries $\$  - $\[ \]$  - $\[ \]$  (Copy)/ $\[ \]$  (Move)

Copying/Moving All Entries

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Copy/Move $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select *Phone Memory|USIM|Memory Card*→

■

#### Note

 The items you can save to Phone Book differ depending on the Phone Memory, Memory Card or USIM Phone Book (page 4-1).

#### Tip

 While selecting multiple entries, press w (Menu) to perform the following:

View/Mark All/Unmark All

# **Editing Phone Book Entries**

Edit and delete entries in Phone Book.

- In Standby, press 😱
- **2** Select an entry→
- **3** Select an item→ → Edit an item → ■
- **4** Press  $\square$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ Save/Save as New $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$

#### Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-10) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- While selecting an item of the entry, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the item, some items may not appear):
   Edit/Call/As Mail/Intl. Calls/Hide My ID/Show My ID/
   Hot Status/Change Type/Clear Field/Change Pic./
   Remove Pic./File Name

# **Deleting Phone Book Entries**

1 In Standby, press 😱

#### **Deleting One Entry**

Select an entry  $\rightarrow \text{ w}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES$ 

## **Deleting Multiple Entries**

 $Press \ \ \, \underline{\hspace{0.5cm}} \ \ \, (Menu) \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select \ \, Multi \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select \\ entries \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc (Delete) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

## **Deleting All Entries**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Owner Information**

Save your own information to *My Details*. Your name, reading, five phone numbers, five email addresses, picture, address, birthday and location information can be saved. Also, check saved information during a call (page 2-10) or insert it into a message.

# **Adding Information**

Main Phone Book My Details

1 Select an item→ \( \square \) (Menu)→\( Edit \rightarrow \) →Enter information \( \cdot \) \( \square \)

**Setting Your Name** 

Select  $Name \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \veebar (Menu) \rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxminus (OK)$ 

# **2** Press ☐ (OK)

## Tip

- For details on setting items see page 4-2.
- If you press (Send) in Step 1, you can send your own phone number by S! Mail, Bluetooth or infrared communication.

# **Using Your Location Information**

Main menu Phone Book My Details

**Select** *Personal Info.*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Location Exist*  $\rightarrow$ 

🛂 (Menu)

• If you have not set location information, select *No Location*.

**Checking the Map from Location Information** 

Select *Open Map* → Send/Ask *Once Only* → Start the navigation application and display the map

 If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

**Sending Location Information by S! Mail** 

Select *Location Mail*→ ■ → Create a message

**Editing Location Information** 

Select *Add Location*→

**Deleting Location Information** 

Select *Delete*→

Tip

 If you have not set location information, you can only select Add Location.

# **Using Speed Calling to Make Calls**

Enter the last two digits of the Memory Number (Entry Number) 0000 to 0099 of Phone Memory Phone Book and press 🖊 to make calls.

1 In Standby, enter the last two digits of the Entry Number→ ✓

A call is made to the party specified by the Entry Number.

#### Tip

- When the Entry Number is 0000 to 0009, enter the last single digit only and press .
- If Phone Book entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

# **Setting Phone Book**

# **Setting the Default Storage Place**

Preset the default storage place for new Phone Book entries.

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ Settings

- **1** Select Select Storage→
- 2 Select Always Ask|Phone Memory|USIM|Memory Card→
  - If you want to set the storage place every time you save an entry, select Always Ask.

# **Prohibiting Use of Phone Book**

Main menu Phone Book Settings

- **Select** *Phone Book*  $Lock \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select  $Lock \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - If you want to use Phone Book, enter your security code to temporarily cancel Phone Book Lock.

#### Note

 If Phone Book Lock is set to Lock, speed calling (left) cannot be used to make calls.

# **S! Address Book**

Use S! Address Book to save and manage the handset's Phone Book on the network server.

The following functions are available for S! Address Book.

Function	Description			
Backup (Synchronization)	Back up Phone Book to the server from the handset. Select manual or automatic synchronization (page 4-14).			
Reload (Synchronization)	Reload Phone Book on the server to the handset. Select from the three reloading methods (page 4-14).			
Editing*	Edit Phone Book on the server from the PC.			
Import/Export*	Download Phone Book on the server to the PC and upload Phone Book in the PC to the server.			
Birthday Notification*	If the server's Phone Book has the birthday information, receive an SMS message from the server notifying you of people's birthdays.			
Email Address Notification*	Inform friends of your new email address by sending a notice to multiple addresses.			

<sup>\*</sup> For details, see the website below (as of February, 2007). http://www.softbank.jp/SAB

## **About Subscription**

- A separate subscription is required to use the S! Address Book service. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- You will be sent a user ID and password notification mail (SMS) after your S!
   Address Book application is complete. If you do not receive a user ID and
   password notification mail, contact SoftBank General Information (page
   24-33).
- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service.
- In case you replace your handset, the compatibility with a new model is as follows:
  - 3G series (compatible with S! Address Book): Phone Book stored on the server is retained, and you can use it from your new handset.
  - 3G series (not compatible with S! Address Book): The service of S! Address Book continues and Phone Book on the server is retained. However, you cannot access to Phone Book from your new handset (you can access from a PC).
  - V3, V4, V5, V6, and V8 series: S! Address Book is canceled automatically, and Phone Book on the server is deleted.
- When you cancel S! Address Book, Phone Book on the server is deleted.

#### **Operating Precautions**

- If you forget your password, perform the following: In Standby, press ☑→設定・申込 →利用状況の確認
  - Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Try again if synchronization failed due to poor reception or a low battery.
   Synchronization may have taken place with Synchronize regardless of the synchronization type setting.
- If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of Synchronize, From Client, or Backup after deleting all the entries on Phone Book on your handset, Phone Book on the server is deleted. If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of Synchronize, From Server, or Restore after deleting all the entries in Phone Book on the server, Phone Book on your handset is deleted.
- Of Phone Book items, *Picture* and *Personal Info.* are exempted from synchronization. These items set in the handset are all deleted if you synchronize in *Restore* type.
- SoftBank is not liable for any loss of information in Phone Book on the handset and the server due to cancellation of the service or errors during synchronization.
- In order to maintain consistency between Phone Book on your handset and the server, we recommend that you synchronize Phone Book regularly.
   It may take time to synchronize after you carry out a lot of editing (modification, addition, deletion, etc.) on Phone Book on your handset or the server.

## **Synchronizing Phone Book**

Main 

Phone Book 

S! Addr. Book 

Start Sync

Select Start → ■ → Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Follow the onscreen instructions.

#### Note

 Upon starting synchronization, your handset is connected to the Internet. A communication fee is charged during Internet connection.
 Ending synchronization terminates the connection automatically.

#### Tip

- When synchronizing for the first time, Synchronize is used regardless
  of the synchronization type setting (page 4-14).
- The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. **Synchronize** is set by default.

# **Synchronization Settings**

## **Automatic Synchronization**

Select from manual and automatic synchronization. If you select automatic mode, synchronization is performed at fixed intervals.

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ S! Addr. Book ▶ Sync Settings

**1** Select Auto Sync $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  ONIOFF $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

 After selecting ON, perform the following to set the synchronization schedule.

Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  *After Updated/Weekly/Monthly*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

If you select *Weekly*, you also will need to specify the day of the week and time. If you select *Monthly*, you also will need to specify the day and time.

 If you select After Updated, synchronization will be performed automatically after about 10 minutes whenever the handset's Phone Book is edited.

# **2** Press (Save)

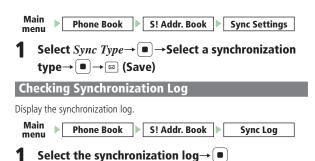
Tip

 The synchronization type is set to the same type for manual and automatic synchronization. The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. Synchronize is set by default.

## **Synchronization Type**

Select from the following types.

Туре	Description	Note		
Synchronize information in the handset's Phone Book to the server and download any new information		If information in the same field in both the handset and on the server has been changed, the information on the server takes priority.		
Back up changes to the		Changes to the information in the server's Phone Book are not reflected to the handset.		
From Server	Upload changes to the information in the server's Phone Book to the handset.	Changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book are not reflected to the server.		
Backup	Delete the existing Phone Book data on the server and back up all Phone Book data in the handset to the server.	All the information in the server's Phone Book is deleted.		
Restore	Delete the existing Phone Book data in the handset and reload all Phone Book data on the server to the handset.	All the information in the handset's Phone Book is deleted. All items exempt from synchronization (page 4-13) will not be uploaded.		



# **About Video Calls**

A video call enables two parties with video call compatible handsets to send images to each other while they talk.

 The video call function of your handset complies with the 3G-324M international standard for 3G mobile videophones.

#### **Indicators**



- Mute My Voice
- Mute All
- Faster Moving Mode
- Standard Mode
- **Better Picture Mode**
- (III) Handsfree ON
- Handsfree (Bluetooth® connection)
- M Image Transfer OFF
- Sending Picture
- Voice Connection Established
- Video Connection Established

# **Making a Video Call**

While you are making a video call, pictures being taken by the camera will be sent over to the other party. You can also select to send a still image instead of pictures now being taken. You may want to switch between the Main camera and the Sub camera during a video call.

# Enter a phone number and press 👺

The video call is made.

 When Self-view (page 5-4) is set as ON, confirm an image of yourself as a camera image and press to send outgoing image.

# **2** Press 🔁 to end the call

#### Note

 When Cost Limit (page 2-9) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

#### Tip

- When you make a video call to a device that does not support video calls, a warning message appears and you can make a voice call. When you make a video call to a party who is not in an area with 3G-network coverage, a warning message appears.
- During video calls, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   End Call/Hold/Mute/Screen Set./Alt. Picture (page 5-3)/Send
   Picture (page 5-4)/Phone Book (page 4-7)/Call Log/My Details

# **Answering a Video Call**

1 Press ✓/ when a video call is received

A confirmation window appears. Select **YES** or **NO** and press **o** to send or block your outgoing image.

- You can send an image of yourself to the other party after confirming your image by pressing 🖾 (⑤) when a call is received.
- **2** Press To end the call

Tip

- By pressing , you can also answer an incoming video call.
- You can place an incoming video call on hold (page 2-3).
- You can reject an incoming video call if you press v (Menu) and select
   Reject Call when a call is received.
- Besides ✓, and ☜ you can also answer video calls by pressing □.②-□.③, ¥ ⅰ or #☆ when Any Key Answer (page 12-11) is set to ON.
- You can answer video calls only by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 12-11) is set to ON.
- If you miss a video call, Information Prompt (page 1-8) appears.
- When you receive a video call from a Phone Book entry, the name appears on the display. If you receive a video call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to *ON* when Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to *Hide*, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while a video call is being received, use .

Tip

During calls, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 End Call/Hold/Mute/Screen Set./Alt. Picture (page 5-3)/Send
 Picture (page 5-4)/Phone Book (page 4-7)/Call Log/My Details

# **Engaged Video Call Operations**

# **Adjusting the Speaker Volume**

1 During a call, use 🚺

# **Muting Microphone**

- **1** During a call, press  $\mathbf{v}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Mute \rightarrow \mathbf{e}$
- **2** Select *Mute My VoicelMute All*→
  - To cancel the mute, press (■) during a call.

# Switching between the Earpiece & Speaker

Switch between the earpiece and speaker during a call.

**1** During a call, press 

(♠)/

(♠)

## **Using Zoom**

**1** During a call, use •••

Note

• Zoom is unavailable while you are sending a picture.

Switching between the Main Camera and Sub Camera

**1** During a call, press

## **Switching Screen Display**

Select the screen display method during a call.

1 During a call, press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Screen Set. \rightarrow$ 

**2** Select Switch→

■

Displaying a Large Incoming Image and a Small Outgoing Image

Select *In. Prior*→

**Displaying Only the Incoming Image** 

Select *Incoming Only*→

Displaying a Small Incoming Image and a Large Outgoing Image

Select *Out. Prior*→

Displaying Only the Outgoing Image

Select *Outgoing Only*→

## **Changing the Image Quality**

Change the preset Image Quality (page 5-4) during a call.

- During a call, press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Screen Set. $\rightarrow$
- **2** Select *Image Quality*→
- **3** Select the output format→

## **Changing the Alternative Image**

- 1 During a call, press  $\mathbf{v}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Alt$ .  $Picture \rightarrow \mathbf{\bullet}$
- **2** Select Alt. Pic.  $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image

Select **Preset**→

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card

Select **Phone Memory/Memory Card**  $\longrightarrow$  Select an image  $\longrightarrow$ 

Handset automatically adjusts image size.

Tip

 After ending a call, the alternative picture will return to the setting specified in the Alternative Picture setting (page 5-4). 5

## **Sending a Picture**

- **1** During a call, press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Send Picture $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$
- **2** Select Send Pic.  $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Select *Phone Memory|Memory Card*  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  Select an image  $\rightarrow \square$

## **Video Call Settings**

Methods for making and receiving video calls and images to be displayed can be set beforehand.

## Setting the Alternative Image

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- **1** Select *Alt. Picture*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $ON \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - If you select *OFF*, the camera image will be sent out.
  - You can change the alternative picture during a call (page 5-3).

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image Select *Preset*→ (twice)

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card
Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select an image
→ ■ (twice)

## **Setting Self-view Confirmation**

Confirm the self-view (the image to be sent) by activating the Sub camera automatically before sending out a video call.

Main 
menu 

Settings 

Call Settings 

Video Call

**1** Select Self-view  $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## **Setting the Image Quality**

Main menu Settings Call Settings Video Call

- **1** Select *Image Quality*→
- **2** Select the output format→
  - You can change the image quality during a call (page 5-3).

## **Setting Auto Answer for Video Calls**

When the Auto Answer function for video calls is set to *ON*, video calls received from phone numbers in the Auto Answer list are answered automatically without having to press a key.

 Regardless of manner mode setting (page 12-1), the speaker will beep and the video call is automatically connected.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

Select  $Auto\ Answer \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (twice)  $\rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Adding a Phone Number to the Auto Answer List for Video Calls

Main Settinas Call Settings Video Call menu

- Select Auto Answer  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Answer List  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
- Press 

  (Add)→Enter your security code (page) 1-22)

### Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select **Phone Book**  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  Select a Phone Book entry  $\rightarrow \square$ Select a phone number → (twice)

#### **Entering a Phone Number Directly**

Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

## Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select  $Call Log \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (twice)

#### Tip

• When a phone number has already been added, press [77] (Menu) after selecting **Answer List** to perform the following: Edit/Delete

## **Setting Mute**

Either sending voice or sending & receiving voices can be muted during video calls.

Main Call Settings **Settings** Video Call menu

- Select *Mute*→
- **Select** *Mute My VoicelMute AllIOFF*  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 
  - You can set the mute setting during a call (page 5-2).

## Setting the Speaker for Video Calls

Set whether the other party's voice is output through the Stereo Speaker or the Earpiece. Set it to ON if you want to hear the voice from the Stereo Speaker.

Main Call Settings **Settings** Video Call menu

- **Select** *Loud Speaker*→
- Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

• When Loud Speaker is set to ON, the other party's voice sounds from only one of the speakers.

## **Setting Hold Image**

Set the image to be sent out to the other party while placing an incoming call on hold or while holding the call you are making.



Select Hold Setting→ 

→Hold on Call|Hold

 $Answer \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image

Select **Preset**→ (twice)

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card*  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  Select an image  $\rightarrow \square$  (twice)

## **Digital TV**

## **One Seg Digital TV Broadcasts**

#### Terrestrial digital TV broadcasting for mobile devices.

Terrestrial digital broadcasting in Japan divides each 6 MHz frequency band into 13 segments. 12 of the segments are used for household HDTV broadcasting and the remaining one segment (One Seg) is devoted to mobile devices

With One Seg, receive TV and data broadcasts on your handset.

For more information on One Seg services, visit The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

http://www.dpa.or.jp (PC)

http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Mobile Site) Japanese Only

#### Tip

- Terrestrial digital and One Seg broadcasting uses terrestrial UHF band waves.
- One Seg is referred to in this manual as "Digital TV".

#### Precautions

- Extend the TV rod antenna (page 6-2) when using the Digital TV.
- The TV rod antenna is for receiving digital television signals.
   You should leave it stowed in the handset whenever you are not watching the Digital TV.
- Digital TV supports reception in Japan only. Other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, and so Digital TV reception is not possible outside of Japan.

- Never use the Digital TV while riding a bicycle or motorcycle, or while driving a car. Doing so can make it difficult to hear sounds around you, or the image or audio can distract you and create the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you when using the Digital TV. Be especially careful in the vicinity of railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- Digital TV images and/or audio can be affected if mail is received while you are using the Digital TV.
- Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data stored or settings configured by you due to an accident, malfunction, or repair of handset. Also note that Digital TV information (data recorded from the Digital TV, TV links, etc.) saved on the handset cannot be transferred to another handset when replacing the current handset, including changing to another model and repair.
- You will not be able to watch Digital TV broadcasts if your handset does not have a USIM card installed or if your contract with SoftBank expires.
- Channels allocated for the Channel settings (page 6-3) are based on information available as of February 2007. Whenever there is a change in the regional broadcasting channels, use *Scan* to update the Channel setting.

#### **Broadcast Signals**

Signal reception may be bad in the following areas, which can result in poor quality images and audio.

- Areas far away from or extremely close to the broadcast source
- Near mountains or hills
- Inside of a moving train or car, underground, in a tunnel, etc.
- Near high-tension electrical wires, neon lighting, wireless stations, railway lines, highways, etc.

• Other areas where there is a large number of signal obstructions, or areas that are cut off from the signal.

#### **Battery Level**

Use of the Digital TV is not possible when the battery level is at " $\blacksquare$ " (Level 1), except during charging. The Digital TV will turn off automatically if the battery level drops to " $\blacksquare$ " (Level 1) while you are using it.

#### **About Charging**

You can use the Digital TV while charging the battery.

- Watching or recording Digital TV while charging can cause longer charging time or unfinished charging.
- Locating the AC Charger cord too close to the TV rod antenna while charging can cause interference with the Digital TV image.

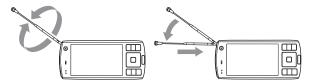
## **Extending/Retracting TV Rod Antenna**

## **Extending TV Rod Antenna**

Pull and fully extend the antenna. Rotate it to adjust signal reception.

## Retracting TV Rod Antenna

Return the antenna to horizontal position, then gently push in.



#### Note

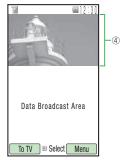
- Never try to adjust the angle or apply excessive force by holding the tip
  of the TV rod antenna. Doing so can cause the TV rod antenna to bend.
- When using the TV rod antenna, extend it as far as it will go. Note, however, that the best image and audio reception may be possible with the TV rod antenna stowed inside the handset if you are very close to the source of the broadcast.

#### Windows

Select from the following views. The default view is Full Screen. Change view setting to suit your needs (page 6-6).



Portrait View (Image Mode)



Portrait View (Data Broadcast Mode)



Landscape View



Full Screen View

- ①Station Name
- 2 Program Name
- 3 Channel Number
- 4) Picture

- ⑤Subtitle
- ⑥Volume
- 7Key Guide

## **Setup & Watching TV**

## **Configuring Channel Settings**

Because the channels that can be received depend on your location, the first thing you should do before using the TV is to configure its reception channel settings.



- **1** Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$  (twice)
- **2** Select *Manual*→

**Configuring Channel Settings Automatically** Select *Scan*→

- **3** Select the area→ → Select the prefecture →
  - For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select Hokkaido for the area, select a city.

## **Watching TV**

Main TV

**1** Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

## 2 Select a channel

## Selecting a Channel Directly with the Keypad

Use keys ( to ( and ( to select a channel).

- Select channel 10 by pressing ★ 🛣 , channel 11 by 🗔 🕮 , and channel 12 by 🖽 .
- Direct channel selection cannot be used when keypad operations are used by the data broadcaster while viewing in data broadcast mode.

## **Changing Channels Manually**

Press • / •

## Searching Automatically for Receivable Channels (Channel Search)

Press and hold • / •

## Selecting a Channel from the Channel List

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Set Channels  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Detail)  $\rightarrow$  Select the channel  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## 3 To exit Digital TV reception, press ☐/@UP/Xモ

 Pressing (2017/2018) while watching in data broadcast mode will not exit Digital TV reception.

#### Note

Do not remove the battery pack while the Digital TV is in operation.
 Doing so can cause the Set Channels (page 6-10), broadcast memory (page 6-12), TV Links (page 6-7), and other data to become corrupted or deleted.

#### Tip

- Press and hold in in Standby to view Digital TV. In addition, press in Standby and select Watch TV from Landscape Index (page 1-19).
- When manner mode is set to *Silent* or *Alarms* (page 12-1), a
  confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
  select *YES*. Select *NO* if you do not want to disable manner mode.
  However, the confirmation window is not displayed when earphones are
  connected.
- Connect Stereo Earphone (optional) and Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Stereo Headset (optional) to listen to Digital TV audio wirelessly. Note, however, some Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Stereo Headsets may not support Digital TV audio output, even though they work when playing music and movie files.
- Press (Menu) while watching Digital TV to perform the following: Record (page 6-7)/Capture (page 6-9)/Subtitles (page 6-5)/Switch Audio (page 6-6)/Program Guide (page 6-5)/TV Links (page 6-7)/ Settings (page 6-10)/Key Guide

## **Operations While Viewing TV**

Function	Operation (Image Mode)	Operation (Data Broadcast Mode)
Adjusting volume	Press / or	Press 4/v
Image mode/data broadcast mode screen switching	Press ᠍ (ToData)	Press  (To TV)
Portrait view/landscape view/ full screen view switching	Press 💬	Press 💬
Data broadcast full screen switching	_	Press and hold 💬
Displaying the on-screen display (OSD function)*2	Press and hold 📵	Press and hold 📵 *3
Recording a program	Press and hold	Press and hold •*3
Capturing an image	Press •	Press •*3
Moving the cursor	_	Press 🗖/ 😱

- \*¹ While landscape view is displayed, the functions assigned to •, ¹/, are different. See page 1-19 for details.
- \*2 While viewing the Digital TV, you can display the program title, station name, remote control number/channel, and broadcast signal strength.
- \*3 This operation is not possible during full screen display of a data broadcast.

#### Tip

 While a Stereo Earphone (optional) and Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Stereo Headset (optional) are connected, only volume adjustments are possible using volume keys (+) and (-) (page 8-5).

## **Using the Program Guide**

The Electronic Program Guide (EPG) S! Appli lets you select a program and activate the Digital TV.

Main menu ► TV

**1** Select *Program Guide*→

The program guide appears. For details about the procedure, see the program guide help.

## Setting Subtitle and Audio

## **Setting Subtitle**

Set whether subtitles should appear when viewing the Digital TV.

Main menu TV

**1** Select *Watch TV* $\rightarrow$  **•** 

**2** Press [m] (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Subtitles $\rightarrow$ 

3 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Note

 When the TV viewing screen is in full screen mode (page 6-3), the subtitles will not display even if the subtitle setting is set to ON.

## **Setting Audio**

Select the audio channel for output while viewing the Digital TV.

Main TV

**1** Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Switch Audio \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**3** Select  $Main/Sub \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

## **Configuring the Audio Output Destination**

Main menu TV

**1** Select *Output Setting*→

**2** Select Speaker/Earphone or Wireless→

■

 When Wireless is selected, select a wireless device from among the registered devices (page 11-6). See page 8-4 for information about using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional).

## Setting Digital TV Image Quality

Main menu TV

**1** Select *Image Quality*→

**2** Select Fine|Normal|Cinema→

## **Setting Digital TV Startup Screen**

Set the viewing screen that appears when you activate the Digital TV from the Main menu.

Main TV

**1** Select *First View*→

**2** Select Portrait|Landscape|Full Screen→

■

## **Using the Data Broadcast Mode**

In addition to images and audio, you can view data broadcast with the Digital TV. Access a variety of information including still images and video clips relating to the program.

## 1 On the Digital TV viewing screen, press ☐ (ToData)

This switches to the data broadcast mode.

● Pressing (To TV) returns to the image mode.

#### Note

Receiving data broadcasts does not incur connection fees. However, you
will be charged if you utilize a service that uses the Internet.

6

Digital TV

#### Tip

- Broadcast data cannot be displayed on a landscape view screen.
- Press and hold while in the data broadcast mode to display a data broadcast in full screen. To return to the previous view, press and hold again.

## **Using TV Links**

Save TV links to access data broadcast memo information and related websites. After you save a TV link, you can use it to display memo information or related information by connecting to the Internet.

#### Registering a TV Link

You can save up to 50 TV links.

# In data broadcast mode (page 6-6), select items such as テレビリンク登録 (Save TV Links)→ ■

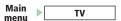
 The actual procedure depends on the program. For details, see the information within the data broadcast.

#### Displaying Memo Information or a Website from a TV Link

About TV Link List Icons

The following icons appear to indicate the TV link type.

TV Link (Valid/Expired)	Description
Memo Information ( )/ )	Data broadcast information
Link communication contents ( )/ ()	Connection to data broadcast site
Mobile contents ( )	Connection to mobile site
PC contents (@//@)	Connection to PC site



## Select $TV Links \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a TV link \rightarrow \blacksquare$

 For some TV links, an Internet connection confirmation window will appear. If you select Ask Once Only, the confirmation window will not be displayed from the next time.

#### Tip

- If the TV link period of validity has expired, a TV link delete confirmation window will appear. Selecting YES will delete the selected TV link.
- Press (Menu) while a TV link is selected to perform the following:
   Delete/Delete All/Change Order

## Recording and Playing Back a Program

## **Recording a Program**

You can record a program as you watch it. In addition to images and audio, you also can record subtitle and data broadcast information.

You can record for up to four hours per recording.



## **Select** Watch $TV \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Display$ the program

• For information about changing the channel, see page 6-4.

2 Press 🖭 (Menu)→Record→ 🔳

Program recording starts.

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  / $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Recording stops and saved to TV folder.

#### Note

- Except for your own personal enjoyment, any use of recordings made by you that infringes upon the copyrights of copyright holders is prohibited.
- Due to copyright restrictions, you may not be able to record certain programs.

#### Tip

- Regardless of the screen view you are using to view a program, the recording size is always W320 x H240 or W320 x H180.
- Recording is terminated automatically and the recorded data is stored in Data Folder whenever any of the following occurs:
  - · When a voice/video call or Circle Talk call is received during recording
  - · When the battery goes low " (Level 1) during recording
  - · When Data Folder becomes full
  - · When the recording time exceeds four hours
- Press ☑ (Menu) while recording a program to perform the following: Subtitles (page 6-5)/Switch Audio (page 6-6)/Brightness (page 6-10)/Key Guide

## **Playing Back a Recorded Program**

Main menu TV

- **Select** TV  $Player \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select the program to be played back→

  ■

#### Tip

- You also can play back a recorded program by the following operation.
   Main menu → Data Folder → TV → Select the program to be played back
- When manner mode is set to Silent or Alarms (page 12-1), a
  confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
  select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode.
  However, the confirmation window is not displayed when earphones are
  connected.
- Press (Menu) while playing back a program to perform the following:

Subtitles (page 6-5)/Switch Audio (page 6-6)/Settings (page 6-10)/ Key Guide

## About Operations While a Program is Playing or Paused

Function	Operation (Image Mode)	Operation (Data Broadcast Mode)
Fast forward	Press *1*2	_
Rewind	Press • *1*2	_
High-speed fast forward	During fast forward, press *1*2*3	_
High-speed rewind	During rewind, press	_
Frame advance	Press *1*4	_
Frame back	Press • *1*4	_
Adjusting volume	Press  or	Press 4/v
Image mode/data broadcast mode screen switching*2	Press  (ToData)	Press  (To TV)
Portrait view/landscape view/ full screen view switching*2	Press 💬	Press 💬
Data broadcast full screen switching	_	Press and hold ************************************
Displaying the on-screen display (OSD function)*5	Press and hold 🕫	Press and hold 📵 *2*6
Moving the cursor	_	Press 🕛/ 😱

- \*¹ While landscape view is displayed, the functions assigned to •, ¹/• are different. See page 1-19 for details.
- \*2 During playback only.
- \*3 Pressing oduring high-speed fast forward or during high-speed rewind returns to normal fast forward or rewind, respectively. Pressing during high-speed fast forward or during high-speed rewind returns to normal playback.
- \*4 While playback is paused only.
- \*5 This function displays the program playback status and station name during program playback or while playback is paused.
- $^{\star 6}$  This operation is not possible during full screen display of a data broadcast.

## Capturing an Image

Save captures of program scenes while recording.

Main menu TV

- Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow D$  is play the program
  - For information about changing the channel, see page 6-4.
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Capture $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

Captures are saved to *Pictures* folder.

#### Note

 Except for your own personal enjoyment, any use of recordings made by you that infringes upon the copyrights of copyright holders is prohibited.

#### Tip

- You cannot capture images during recording.
- Due to copyright restrictions, you may not be able to capture images from certain programs.
- Regardless of the screen view you are using to view a program, the captured image size is always W320 x H240 or W320 x H180.

## **Configuring Digital TV Settings**

## **Setting Digital TV Backlight**

Set the brightness of the Digital TV backlight.

Main TV

**1** Select *Watch TV*→

**2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Brightness $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**3** Select a brightness level→

## **Configuring Channel Settings**

Set up a channel list of channels you want to view, and add channel lists. Up to three channel lists can be set up at the same time.

#### **Setting Up and Adding Channel Lists**

Main TV

**1** Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Set Channels  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**3** Select  $Empty \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Manual \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Configuring Channel Settings Automatically Select  $Scan \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**4** Select the area → ■ → Select the prefecture → ■

 For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select *Hokkaido* for the area, select a city.

Tip

 Press (Menu) while a previously set channel list is selected to perform the following:

Rename/Delete

Digital TV

## **Selecting a Channel List for Viewing**

- **1** Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Set Channels  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **3** Select a channel list→

## **Setting Data Communication**

## **Setting Data Communication Confirmation Window**

Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever a connection is established for data communication.

- **Select** Watch  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$

#### **Setting Secure Connection Confirmation Window**

Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever data communication that uses encryption, a digital signature, or some other security function is performed over a secure connection (SSL).

Main menu TV

- Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Datacasting $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **3** Select Go to Secured→ → Ask before|Do not Ask → ■

## **Setting Memory Access Confirmation Window**

Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever Digital TV broadcast memory is accessed.

- **Select** *Watch*  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Datacasting $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

# Digital TV

## **Deleting Broadcast Memory Contents**

Use the following procedure to delete broadcast information stored in the handset through data broadcast.

Main TV

**1** Select *Watch TV*→

**2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Datacasting $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**3** Select Clear Memory→

**Deleting a Specific Station Memory** 

Select a station  $\rightarrow$   $\checkmark$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Clear \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**Deleting All Station Memories** 

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Clear All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ *YES* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**Deleting a Single Station Memory** 

Select a station  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a memory  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Clear \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**Deleting All Memories of a Station** 

Select a station  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Clear All*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **Location Information Send Settings**

Specify whether location information should be sent automatically when there is a location information request when using data broadcasting.

Main TV

**Select** *Watch*  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\square$   $\rightarrow$ Datacasting $\rightarrow$   $\square$ 

**3** Select Send Location→

**Display the Confirmation Window Each Time** 

Select *Always Ask*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

Send Location Information without Displaying the Confirmation Window

Select **Send**→

Do not Send Location Information without Displaying the Confirmation Window

Select **Do not Send**→

#### Note

- Positioning cannot be done when Positioning Lock (page 21-4) is set.
   When sending location information, select *OFF* for the Positioning Lock.
- Even if Always Ask or Send is specified for location information send settings, location information is not sent if Do not Send is selected for S!
   GPS Navi location information send settings (page 21-4).

#### **Setting the Manufacture Number**

Specify whether your manufacture number (IMEI) is sent automatically as a user ID when you use a data broadcast.

- **1** Select Watch  $TV \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\square$   $\rightarrow$ Datacasting $\rightarrow$   $\square$
- **3** Select Manufacture #→ ■→SendlDo not Send → ■

## **Setting the Content Storage Location**

Specify the storage location of contents obtained while using a data broadcast.

- **Select** *Watch*  $TV \rightarrow \blacksquare$

## **Setting the Off-Timer**

Set the Digital TV to end automatically after a preset amount of time expires.

Main TV

- **1** Select *Watch TV* $\rightarrow$
- **2** Press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ →Off-timer→ → 30 minutes/60 minutes/120 minutes/OFF→ ■

Tip

 Recording continues even when the preset time of off-timer expires. The Digital TV will end after recording is completed.

## **About the Camera**

The handset is equipped with a 3.24 million effective pixel camera that has auto focus and digital zoom. Use the camera to take pictures and record videos, as well as to scan QR codes (page 7-13).

#### **Precautions**

- The pictures are saved in JPEG format, and videos in MPEG-4 format.
- Be aware that camera shake may occur. Hold the handset firmly to ensure that it does not move, or set the image stabilizer function (page 7-8) to ON when shooting photos.
- If there is a fingerprint or grease on the lens cover, the subject cannot be focused. Wipe dirt off with a soft cloth.
- Be careful that your finger or the strap does not cover the lens when taking pictures or recording videos.

## Display

#### Window when taking pictures/recording videos

There are two windows: Finder and Preview. Landscape View (page 1-19) can be used when shooting with *Digital/Video*.

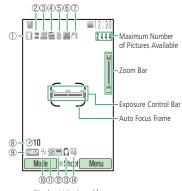
Finder Window

From the camera/video launch to taking pictures/recording videos.

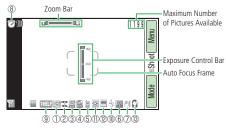
Preview Window

After taking pictures/recording videos.

#### **Camera Indicators**



Finder Window\*1



Landscape View Finder Window (page 1-19)\*2

- \*1 In case of *Mobile* (page 7-5)
- \*2 Landscape View window can be used with *Digital* (page 7-5) only.

#### ①Camera Mode/Multi Shots

Digital

Multi Shots (High Speed)

■ Mobile

- Multi Shots (Normal Speed)
- Scan Data Sub Camera On
- Multi Shots (Low Speed)

(2) Picture Size

W2048 × H1536 <sup>2048</sup> W2048 × H1232 1500 W1600 × H1200

- ₩ W240 × H320 ₩ W144 × H176 W120 × H160
- $^{1280}_{950}~W1280 \times H960$ ₩ W640 × H480
- ₩ W112 × H112 # W96 × H128
- **W**480 × H800
- (3) Quality Fine

Normal

Economy

**4** Exposure

 $[3] \dots [3] \dots [3] -2.0 \dots + 0 \dots + 2.0$ 

- **⑤Storage** 
  - Phone Memory
- Memory Card

- **6** Focus Mode
  - Auto

Macro

Infinity

- (7) Resist Shake
  - Resist Shake ON
- **® Delay Timer ७ 15** 5 sec
- ☼10 10 sec
- **७** 20 sec

- **9Key Guide Display** 
  - **THELP** Key Guide Display

#### **Mobile Light**

Mobile Light On

#### **Mhite Balance**

Daylight

Fluor (Wht)
Tungsten

Cloudy Fluor (Day)

(2) Color Control

Intense

Soft

**®Picture Mode** 

Bright
Redness

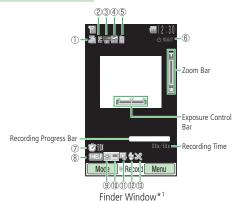
SensitiveABC Character

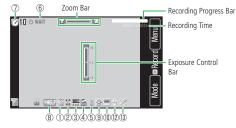
Night

**4** Self-view

Self-view On

## **Video Camera Indicators**





Landscape View Finder Window (page 1-19)\*2

- \*1 In case of Video Mail (page 7-11)
- \*2 Landscape View window can be used with Video (page 7-11) only.

#### ①Video Mode

🎬 Video On

Short Video On

Video Mail On Sub Camera On

- ②Image Size (Record Size)
  - Video (W640 × H480)
  - $^{\text{\tiny 840}}_{\text{\tiny 320}}$  Video (W320 × H240)
  - ™ Video Mail (W176 × H144)
  - 5 Short Video (W128 × H96)
- **3Quality**

Fine

Mormal

Economy

**4** Exposure

**≦**... **5**... **5** −2.0...± 0... +2.0

**⑤Storage** 

Phone Memory

Memory Card

► PLAY Playing

III PRUSE Paused

**⑦Delay Timer** 

**७ 05** 5 sec **७ 10** 10 sec

**8 Key Guide Display 1HELP** Key Guide Display

**9White Balance** 

🕸 Daylight

Cloudy
Fluor (Day)

**(1)** Color Control

Intense

Self-view

Self-view On

12 Mobile Light

Mobile Light On

**③Voice Record** 

■STOP Stopped

▶ FWD Forward

◆ REV Rewind

Fluor (Wht)

Tungsten

Soft

⊪slow Slow Playback

**७ 20** 20 sec

**Adjusting Zoom** 

Use  $\begin{tabular}{c} \begin{tabular}{c} \begin{$ 

For details on the zoom in each mode, see pages 7-6 and 7-11.

**Common Operations on Finder Window** 



#### Note

- Zoom is unavailable while the delay timer (page 7-18) is set.
- The larger the zoom, the grainier the quality.

## **Exposure Control**

Use •• to adjust the brightness.



#### Tip

 Depending on the environment, e.g. under fluorescent light, a striped pattern may appear on the image, which can be reduced by adjusting the brightness.

Camera

## **Mobile Light**

Press 🖭 to turn on/off the mobile light. When the mobile light is turned on, " 🐉" appears on the finder window.

## **Using Key Guide Display**

Press [1.5] to display key operations on the finder window. To exit the key guide display, press [1.5] again.

## **Using Self-view**

Set the self-view mode, and you can take a picture of yourself as if you were looking into a mirror. Press ## to turn on/off the self-view mode. When the self-view mode is set to on, " appears on the finder window.

#### Tip

 When the self-view camera is set to ON, Mobile mode (W240 x H320) is selected for taking pictures, while Video Mail mode (W176 x H144) is selected for recording videos.

## **Pictures**

Settings for Frame, Delay Timer, Shutter Sound, effects, etc. can be made. The pictures are saved to Data Folder (Chapter 10) on the handset or memory card (Chapter 9) in JPEG format (popular format for saving images to a PC). Also edit the pictures using Edit Picture (page 7-22) or take pictures of faces (page 7-7) to use them in Phone Book.

#### Camera Modes

There are two modes for taking pictures: *Mobile* and *Digital*.

#### **■**Mobile

Take a picture to set as wallpaper, etc.

#### **■**Digital

Take a high-quality picture to display on an external device such as PC.

Mode	Picture Size	Max. Zoom
Mobile	W480 × H800	Approx. 2.5 ×
	W240 × H320	Approx. 6.4 ×
	W144 × H176	Approx. 10.7 ×
	W120 × H160	Approx. 12.8 ×
	W112 × H112	Approx. 12.8 ×
	W96 × H128	Approx. 16 ×
Digital	W2048 × H1536	_
	W2048 × H1232	_
	W1600 × H1200	Approx. 1.3 ×
	W1280 × H960	Approx. 1.6 ×
	W640 × H480	Approx. 3.2 ×

**Focus Modes for Taking Pictures** 

Take pictures using Auto Focus, which automatically focuses on the subject. Select the focus mode (page 7-8) in accordance with the type of subject you are shooting.

#### Auto

Half press of [32]/ automatically adjusts the focus on the subject in the center of the window. To compose the image, first adjust and lock the focus on the subject in the center of the window and then move the camera as you re-compose the image as desired, so that the subject is kept focused even though it is no longer in the center (page 7-7).

#### Macro

Use this mode for nearby subjects. *Macro* is selected automatically whenever *Character* is selected for the picture mode (page 7-9).

#### Infinity

Use this mode to shoot scenery. Auto Focus is unavailable in this mode. *Infinity* is selected automatically whenever *Night* is selected for the picture mode (page 7-9).

#### Tip

 Auto Focus may not be possible when the subject is moving, when the distance to the subject is out of appropriate range, or due to the brightness of the lighting where you are shooting.

## **Taking a Picture**

Main menu Camera

- **1** Select *Mobile|Digital*→
- **2** Frame the subject on the display→ / ②

The shutter clicks, and the preview window appears.

#### When Focus Mode is Auto

Half press  $\frac{n}{2}$  / $\boxed{0}$   $\rightarrow$  The focus frame in the center of the window turns from white to green  $\rightarrow$  Press  $\boxed{\bullet}$  / $\boxed{0}$  completely

- The focus frame becomes red if focusing is failed.
- 3 Press •

If Storage (page 7-18) is set to **Phone Memory**, the picture is saved to **Pictures** in Data Folder (page 10-1), and the finder window reappears. If it is set to **Memory Card**, a picture taken in **Mobile** is saved to **Pictures**, one taken in **Digital** to **Digital Camera**, and the finder window reappears.

#### Note

When there is not enough light, e.g. in a dark place, the picture quality
may deteriorate and white dots may appear. It is recommended to take
pictures in bright places or to use the Mobile Light.

#### Tip

- Pressing in Standby also displays the finder window.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the finder window is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- On the finder window, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
   Picture Size/Data Folder/Self-view/Picture Mode/Multi Shots/

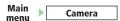
Add Frame/Icons Display/Save Settings/Picture/Function

- After capturing image, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
   Send via/ScreenDisplay/Zoom/To Phone Book/Edit Picture/ Storage
- The storage place can be changed (page 7-18). You can also change the folder for pictures taken in *Mobile* (page 7-5) or pictures taken in *Digital* (page 7-5) whose storage place is set to the handset.

## **Using Auto Focus Lock**

When the subject is not in the center of the viewfinder, camera cannot focus on the subject. Lock the focus on the subject then frame the image.

 The focus mode setting (page 7-8) must be Auto in order to use Auto Focus Lock



- **1** Select *MobilelDigital*→ •
- 2 Position subject in center of Display→Half press ∰/ 0

The Focus frame turns green when subject is in focus.

- Focus frame turns red when focus has failed.
- Re-compose the image→Press /© completely

## Taking a Picture for Phone Book Entry

Take a photo and save the image to a Phone Book entry (page 4-2). Set the camera mode (page 7-5) to Mobile and Picture Size (page 7-6) to  $\textit{W112} \times H112$ .

Activate camera and press ☑ (Menu) → To Phone Book → ■

Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a Picture

Select  $Add New \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Create a Phone Book entry

**Adding a Picture to Phone Book Entry** 

Select  $Add \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select a Phone Book entry  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Edit Phone Book entry

- If the selected Phone Book entry contains a picture, select YES and press (OK) to change the picture.
- For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

## **Setting Camera Modes**

When the camera mode is set, "[Mobile] or "[Mobile] appears on the finder window.

**1** On the finder window, press 

☐ (Mode)

Taking a Picture to Set as Wallpaper, etc.

Select *Mobile* → ■

Taking a High-quality Picture

Select *Digital*→

Tip

 For details on changing the picture size in *Digital* and *Mobile*, see page 7-15.

## Setting Focus Mode

The currently selected focus mode is indicated on the finder window as "\textsum" (Auto), "\textsum" (Macro), or "\textsum" (Infinity).

**1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Function  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Focus  $Mode \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select the focus mode → •

Tip

Macro is selected automatically for the focus mode whenever
 Character is selected for the picture mode, and Infinity is selected
 automatically whenever Night is selected for the picture mode (page
 7-9).

• The focus mode returns to Auto whenever the camera mode is exited.

## **Setting Image Stabilization**

Image stabilization lets you suppress the effects of hand movement when taking pictures.

**1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Function  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Resist Shake $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select  $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Note

- Image stabilization cannot be used while a picture mode (page 7-9) is set.
- Image stabilization may not be effective if hand movement or subject movement is extreme.
- Taking a picture with image stabilization indoors or in other areas where lighting is insufficient can result in an overall graininess in the picture or a picture that looks like it is low resolution.

Tip

 The image stabilization setting returns to OFF whenever the camera mode is exited.

## **Setting Picture Mode**

Select a picture mode that suits the type of picture you want to take. The currently selected picture mode is indicated on the finder window as "\(\inft\)" (Bright), "\(\inft\)" (Redness), "\(\inft\)" (Night), "\(\inft\)" (Sensitive), or "\(\text{ARC}\)" (Character).

Picture Mode Setting	Description	
Bright	Records beautiful white skin tones	
Redness	Records beautiful skin tones	
Night	Mode for taking night scene pictures	
Sensitive	Mode for taking bright pictures in dark locations	
Character	Mode for taking character pictures	
OFF	Turns off picture mode settings	

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Picture*  $Mode \rightarrow \square$
- **2** Select a picture mode→ ■

#### Note

 The picture mode cannot be set while using Multi Shots (right) or the image stabilization (page 7-8) is set.

#### Tip

- The picture mode returns to *OFF* whenever the camera mode is exited.
- When the picture mode is set to *Character*, the focus mode is set to
   *Macro* and when the picture mode is set to *Night*, the focus mode is
   set to *Infinity*.

#### Multi Shots

Take nine pictures in succession. When Multi Shots is set to on, """ (High Speed), """ (Normal Speed) or """ (Low Speed) appears on the finder window

- **1** On the finder window, press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Multi Shots \rightarrow ($
- **2** Select the speed→

#### Note

- Multi Shots cannot be used when the picture size (page 7-6) is W480 × H800 or when the camera mode (page7-5) is set to Digital.
- Any of the picture modes (left) cannot be used during Multi Shots.

#### Tip

- Nine pictures are taken in about two seconds (High Speed), three seconds (Normal Speed) or four seconds (Low Speed).
- Multi Shots is set to OFF when you stop using the camera or change the mode.

## Frame Setting

Select a frame before you take a picture. There are ten types of frames (W240  $\times$  H320) in the handset Data Folder.

1 On the finder window, press ☞ (Menu)→Add Frame→ ■

2 Select Phone Memory|Memory Card→ → Pictures
→ □ → Select a frame
Releasing a Frame
Select OFF → □

#### Note

Frame cannot be set when the picture size (page 7-6) is W480 × H800 or when the camera mode (page7-5) is set to Digital.

#### Tip

- On the frame preview window, you can press ★ , , , , , o or change frames.
- The frame setting is set to OFF when you stop using the camera or change the mode.

## **Videos**

Recorded videos are saved to the handset (Data Folder) or memory card in MPEG-4 format (popular format for saving data to a mobile phone).

Videos recorded in Video mode with Record Size (page 7-11) set to  $W640 \times H480$  can be stored in the handset Data Folder only.

- MPEG-4 formatted files (.3G2) recorded in Video or stored in Data Folder cannot be attached to a message or sent via infrared/Bluetooth® communication. The files cannot be set as a ringtone pattern or alarm tone.
- MPEG4 or H.263 can be selected as a file format in Video Mail. MPEG4 is a format broadly used on SoftBank mobile phones. H.263 is usually used on foreign mobile phones. If a video cannot be played on the recipient's phone, change the file format and try recording again.

#### Video Modes

There are three modes for recording videos: Video, Video Mail and Short Video.

■Video

Record a video for a long time (up to 20 minutes).

**■**Video Mail

Record a video to attach to a message.

■Short Video

Record a video to attach to a message and send to an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank mobile phone (PDC).

Mode	Size	Max. Zoom
Video	W640 × H480	_
Video	W320 × H240	Approx. 3.2 ×
Video Mail	W176 × H144	Approx. 3.2 ×
Short Video	W128 × H96	Approx. 5.3 ×

## **Recording a Video**

Recorded videos are automatically saved to the *Videos* folder in the *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*.

Main menu ► Camera

- **1** Select *Video|Video Mail|Short Video*→
- **2** Frame the subject on the Display→ ●/◎

The start sound is heard and recording begins.

- If the Video mode (left) is set to *Video*, press (Pause) to pause recording, and (Record) to resume recording.
- 3 Press •/

The end sound is heard and the first frame of the video appears on the preview window.

4 Press

When recording in *Video Mail/Short Video* mode with Auto Save turned *ON* (page 7-17), the video is saved automatically to the location specified by *Storage* (page 7-18) and then the finder window reappears.

#### Tip

- Press and hold o in Standby also displays the finder window.
- The recording time displayed during recording is only intended as an approximate guide.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the finder window is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- On the finder window, press (Menu) to perform the following: Record Size/Data Folder/My Videos/Self-view/ScreenDisplay/ Icons Display/Voice Record/Save Settings/Movie/Function
- Keypad backlight is disabled during recording.
- After recording a video, press (Menu) on the preview window to perform the following:

Play/Send via/Delete/ScreenDisplay/Icons Display/To Phone Book/Storage

- Forward/Rewind and Slow playback can be performed on the preview window.
  - Forward/Rewind: Press and hold during playback
    Slow playback: Press and hold while playback is paused
- While the recording is paused, the recording can be ended (video saved) or stopped.
- Recording end (save): Press
   Recording stop: Press
   (Cancel)
- The storage place and folder can be changed (page 7-18).

## **Deleting a Video**

Delete a video displayed on the preview window.

**1** On the preview window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## Setting Video as a Ringtone Pattern

A video recorded in *Video Mail* or *Short Video* can be set as a ringtone pattern (page 4-3) for voice calls.

1 On the preview window, press ☑ (Menu)→*To Phone Book*→ ■

Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a Ringtone Pattern Select  $Add\ New 
ightharpoonup 
ightharpoonup 
ightharpoonup Create a contact$ 

Adding a Ringtone Pattern to Phone Book Entry
Select  $Add \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select a Phone Book entry  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Edit Phone
Book entry

- If the selected Phone Book entry contains a ringtone pattern, select **YES** and press (OK) to change the ringtone pattern.
- For details on registering a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

## **Functions for Recording Videos**

## **Setting Video Modes**

When Video Mode is set, "" (Video), "" (Video Mail) or "" (Short Video) appears on the finder window.

**1** On the finder window, press 

(Mode)

Recording a Video for a Long Time (up to 20 minutes)
Select Video→
■

Recording a Video to Attach to a Message Select *Video Mail*→

■

Recording a Video for an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank Handset

Select **Short Video**→

## **Recording a Video without Sound**

Record a video without sound. When Voice Record is set to OFF, " $\gg$ " appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Voice Record → ■
- **2** Select  $OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

• Voice Record is set to *ON* when playing/recording is ended.

## **Setting the Video Compression Method**

Set the compression method for videos recorded in Video Mail.

- On the finder window, press v (Menu)→Movie→ v = Encode→v
- **2** Select *MPEG4|H*. 263→ ■

Tip

 The encoding setting is set to MPEG4 when playback is ended or the mode is changed.

## **QR Code**

The Main Camera allows you to scan QR codes and save up to ten scanned data items. However, this number depends on the amount of available memory space. Connect to a URL included in the scanned information, create a message to send to an address included in the scanned information or save it to Phone Book.



#### Note

- The camera may not be able to scan a QR code that is dirty or in the dark.
- Some QR codes cannot be scanned depending on the size or version.

#### Tip

 When a QR code has been divided into data areas, you can scan up to 16 data areas consecutively, and they will be saved as a single QR code data.

## Scanning a QR Code

Main menu Camera Scan Data

**1** Select  $Scan \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Frame a QR code in the Display→

- Use •□• to adjust the exposure.
- When the QR code has been divided into data areas, select YES to scan the other data areas. When all the areas are scanned, the QR code data is displayed.
- **3** Press  $\mathbf{Y}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Save \rightarrow \mathbf{\blacksquare}$

Tip

- The following step can also activate the barcode reader:
   Main menu→Tools→Useful Tools→Scan Data
- If (Mode) is pressed on the scan QR code window, the camera mode can be changed.
- After scanning a code, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items differ depending on the QR code data):
   Go to/To Locations/Save/Copy/To Message

Tip

Depending on the scanned data, press to perform the following:

Data	Operation	
Begins with MAILTO:	Send a message (pages 17-4, 17-9)	
Begins with MEMORY:	Save to Phone Book (page 4-2)	
Contains URL	Access the URL and display the web page	
Contains Media Player URL	Access the URL and display the web page	
Contains an email address	Send a message, save to Phone Book	
Begins with TEL:	Make a call, send a message, save to Phone Book	

## **Checking Scanned Data**

- **1** Select *Scanned Data*→
- **2** Select a QR code data→

Tip

 While a QR code data is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Rename/Delete/Delete All

## Using Location Information Contained in a QR Code

**1** Scan a QR code→¬¬ (Menu)

**Launching Navi Appli** 

Select *Go To*→ 

Launch Navi Appli

Saving a Scanned Data to the Location Memo List

Select **To Locations** $\rightarrow$ [ $\blacksquare$ ]

## **Camera & Video Settings**

## **Camera Settings**

#### **Setting the Picture Quality**

Set the picture quality at which to save a picture (in JPEG format). The higher the quality, the lower the compression rate and the larger the file size. When the quality is set, "" (Fine), "" (Normal) or "" (Economy) appears on the finder window.

- On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Picture
  → ■
- **2** Select  $Quality \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  the quality  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

## **Picture Size Setting**

Picture Size is indicated by the icon (page 7-2).

- **1** Activate camera and press ☑ (Menu)→*Picture* Size →
- **2** Select a picture size→
  - For details on picture sizes, see page 7-6.

#### Date Stamp

Add a date stamp to pictures.

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Picture

**2** Select *Date Stamp*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**3** Select a date color→

#### Note

 When Picture Size (page 7-6) is set to W112 × H112, a date stamp cannot be added.

## Displaying a Grid

Display horizontal and vertical gridlines on the finder window to use as a vertical and horizontal guide for taking pictures.

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Function
→ ■

**2** Select  $Grid \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### **Shutter Sound**

Select either of the two types.

**1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Function  $\rightarrow$ 

#### Tip

- The shutter sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 12-1) is set.

## **Video Settings**

## **Setting the Video Quality**

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→*Movie*→ ■

**2** Select  $Quality \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  the quality  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Tip

- When video mode (page 7-11) is set to Short Video, the video is recorded in Economy.
- A video is recorded in *Fine* when the video mode (page 7-11) is set to *Video* and Record Size is set to *W640* × *H480*.
- The maximum recording time varies depending on the video quality setting.

Camera

#### Image Size (Record Size)

Set the image size (Record Size) when *Video* is set for video mode (page 7-11). Record Size will be displayed on the finder window with the icon (page 7-3).

- **1** Activate video and press ☑ (Menu)→*Record Size*
- **2** Select an image size→

#### **Start & End Sounds**

Select either of the two types.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Function
- **2** Select  $Start/End \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Pattern 1|Pattern 2 \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$

Tip

- The start/end sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 12-1) is set.
- To check the start/end sound, press (Play) while the sound is highlighted.

#### **Setting Full Screen for Videos**

Set the video (excluding Video) size to the display width.

On the finder window, press ☞ (Menu)→
ScreenDisplay→

■

## **Preview Setting**

Set Preview to *On* to view video immediately after recording. Set to *Off* to record another video. This feature is available only in Video mode (page 7-11).

- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

## Camera & Video Settings

#### **Setting Auto Save**

If Auto Save is set to *ON*, after capturing an image or recording a video, the preview window does not appear and the image/video is automatically saved to the storage place specified in *Storage* (page 7-18).

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Save Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Auto Save $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- 2 Select *ONIOFF*→

## **Changing Storage Place**

The storage places for pictures and videos can be changed. When the storage place is set, " \( \begin{align\*} \

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Save Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Storage $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- 2 Select *Phone Memory* | *Memory Card* → □ → Select a folder → □

Note

 Memory Card cannot be set as the storage location for a video recorded in Video mode with Record Size (page 7-11) set to W640 x H480.

Tip

 If the storage place is set to Memory Card and a picture is taken in Digital (page 7-5), the picture is saved to Digital Camera.

## **Delay Timer**

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after \( \bigcup \seta \) \( \bigcup \) is pressed and a specified time elapses. When the delay timer is set, "\( \bigcup 20 \)" (20 sec), "\( \bigcup 10 \)" (10 sec) or "\( \bigcup 05 \)" (5 sec) appears on the finder window.

**1** On the finder window, press **v** (Menu)→*Picturel Movie*→

■

- **2** Select *Delay Timer*→
- **3** Select seconds→

#### Note

• Zoom (page 7-4) is unavailable when the delay timer is activated.

#### Tip

- Press 
   or 
   to take a picture or start recording when the delay timer is activated.
- Press (Cancel) or (2007AE) to stop capturing or recording when the delay timer is activated.
- The delay timer is set to *OFF* when capturing or recording is finished.

#### White Balance

Under some conditions, the colors in pictures and videos may differ from the actual colors. If so, the white balance can be set so that the colors more closely resemble the actual colors. When the white balance is set, " mathrix (Daylight), " mathrix (Cloudy), " mathrix (Fluor (Day)), " mathrix (Fluor (Wht)) or " mathrix (Tungsten) appears on the finder window.

- On the finder window, press ☞ (Menu)→*Picturel Movie*→

  •
- **2** Select White Balance→
- **3** Select an item→

#### Tip

 The white balance is set to Auto when you stop using the camera/ video.

#### **Color Control**

When the color tone is set, " • (Intense) or " • (Soft) appears on the finder window.

- **1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→*Picturel Movie*→ ■
- **2** Select Color Control→

  ■
- **3** Select a color tone→

#### Tip

• The color tone is set to *Neutral* when you stop using the camera/video.

#### **Picture & Video Effects**

Take sepia tone and monochrome pictures.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Picturel Movie $\rightarrow$  $\square$  $\rightarrow$ Effects $\rightarrow$  $\square$
- **2** Select effects→

#### Tip

 The effects setting is set to OFF when you stop using the camera/ video.

#### **Display Indicators**

Set display indicators on or off.

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Icons
Display → ■

#### **Adjusting Flicker**

E.g. under fluorescent light, you can set the frequency (Automatic/50Hz/60Hz) to reduce flicker.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Function
  → ■
- **2** Select Flicker  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Automatic | 50 Hz | 60 Hz  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

### Setting the File Name

Select the file name, taken by the mode other than Digital, to be the date and time or "name of your choice + nnnn". nnnn is a number from 0001 to 9999. In Digital, the name of a file saved to the handset will be the date and time, and the name of a file saved to the memory card will be "DCF\_nnnn".

Select *Date&Time*→

Setting a Name to Your Choice

Select *Define* → Enter a file name → ■

#### **Using Shortcuts**

Enable or disable keypad shortcuts for camera or video functions.

On the finder window, press  $[\nabla r]$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Function  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Key Shortcut \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

• Use the following shortcuts to access functions in camera or video modes.

Key	Camera	Video
I . ≅ *1	Open Key Guide	
≥ Å	Toggle camera modes (N	Mobile or Digital modes)
3.5	Toggle video modes (Video, Video Mail or Short Video modes)	
☐ た GHI	Switch to QR Code Scanner	
5 %	Adjust Picture Quality	
5 to the state of	Adjust White Balance	
□. Fores	Toggle Focus Mode Turn Microphone on/o	
B th√	Toggle Picture Mode Toggle Viewfinder Size*	
9,5	Toggle Picture Size	Toggle Record Size*3
	Icons on/off	
<b>★</b> 📸 * 1	Turn Mobile Light on/off	
# A/a * 1	Switch to Self-view mode	

# **Preview Setting**

To check a picture or video stored in Data Folder or memory card, select it from the finder window or Data Folder.

### **Previewing a Picture**

Preview a picture stored in Data Folder when the camera is activated.

- On the finder window, press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Data$  $Folder \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select a picture →
  - To use the full screen, press (Full).

• When a picture is displayed, press [32] (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file type, some items may not appear): Set as (page 10-3)/Delete/Edit/Location/Send/Details

<sup>\*1</sup> Even if the Key Shortcut is set to *OFF*, the above can be used.
\*2 Key operations are disabled when the video mode is *Video*.
\*3 Key operations are disabled when the video mode is anything other than *Video*.

### **Previewing a Video**

Preview a video stored in Data Folder when the video is activated.

- **1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Data Folder|My Videos → ■
- **2** Select a video→
  - To display the key guide, press [:\*].

#### Tip

- When a video is played, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file type, some items may not appear):
   Set as (page 10-3)/Delete/Mute/Unmute/Normal Screen/Full Screen/Hide Icons\*/Show Icons\*/Search Time (page 8-10)/Send/Web Link/Display Link/Details
  - \* Can only be selected in full screen mode.

### **Send Functions**

If Auto Save (page 7-17) is set to *OFF* or Preview (page 7-17) set to *ON*, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.

#### Note

• Videos recorded in *Video* cannot be sent.

### Sending via Mail

- 1 On the preview window, press 
  ☐ (Mail)
  - For details on creating S! Mail messages, see page 17-4.

#### Tip

 If the file size of a picture to be attached to a message exceeds the limit, a confirmation window appears. If *Compress & Attach* is selected, the size is compressed to 93 Kbytes or less and the picture is attached to a message.

# Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication

- On the preview window, press ☑ (Menu)→
  Send via → ■
- **2** Select *Via Infrared\Via Bluetooth*→
  - For details on infrared communication, see page 11-2. For details on Bluetooth® communication, see page 11-7.

# **Editing a Picture**

Images that have been captured and stored in Data Folder or memory card can be edited. The following types of files can be edited: JPEG files of 2.0 Mbytes or less, PNG files of 1 Mbyte or less. Images that are larger than W480  $\times$  H800 (W800  $\times$  H480) are reduced to W480  $\times$  H800. A picture that is smaller than W32  $\times$  H32 cannot be edited.

- If Overwrite is performed, the file cannot be restored to the original. To leave the original file, select Save as New.
- If Data Folder is full, delete unnecessary files from Data Folder before editing a picture.

### **Changing the Picture Size**

Change the picture size to  $W480 \times H800$ ,  $W480 \times H640$ ,  $W240 \times H400$ ,  $W240 \times H320$ ,  $W144 \times H176$ ,  $W120 \times H160$ ,  $W112 \times H112$ ,  $W96 \times H128$  or Define.

Main menu Tools Useful Tools Edit Picture

**1** Select *Edit*→ → *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→ → Select a picture → ■

2 Press ☑ (Menu)→*Picture Size*→ ■ → Select a picture size → ■

 After selecting the size, you can use to adjust the position of the picture to clip.

Adjusting to the Width or Height

Press  $\square$  (Resize)  $\rightarrow$  *Fit to Width/Fit to Length*  $\rightarrow$   $\square$ 

**Rotating the Picture** 

Press 
(Resize)→ Rotate Image → 

(Resize) → Rotate Image → 

(Resize) → Rotate Image → 
(Resize) → Rotate Image → (Resize) → (Resi

Tip

- When *Edit Picture* is selected after pressing (Menu) on the preview window while in *Mobile* mode with a picture size (page 7-6) other than *W480* × *H800*, the picture size cannot be changed to *W480* × *H800* or *W480* × *H640*.
- If *Define* is selected for the size, enter a size (W32 to 480 × H32 to 800). When *Edit Picture* is selected after pressing (Menu) on the preview window in *Mobile* mode with a picture size (page 7-6) other than *W480* × *H800*, enter a picture size (W32 to 240 x H32 to 400).
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

#### Picture Effects

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Effects* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select effects $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

Selecting a Color Tone

Select *Change Color*→ ■ → •□ / □•

**3** Press  $\bullet \rightarrow \boxtimes$  (OK) $\rightarrow OverwritelSave as New <math>\rightarrow \bullet$ 

Tip

 If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

### Adding a Frame

Select from ten preinstalled frames (W240  $\times$  H320).

Main menu 

Tools 

Useful Tools 

Edit Picture

- **2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Add Frame \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 3 Select Phone Memory|Memory Card→ → Pictures
  → → Select a frame → ●
- **4** Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (OK) $\rightarrow$  Overwrite | Save as New  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$

Tip

- After selecting a frame, you can press ★ ii or ★ ii to change frames.
- If the size of a frame is smaller than that of the picture, you can use 🔂 to adjust the position of the frame.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

### Adding a Stamp

Select from 15 preinstalled stamps.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Edit*→ → *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→ → Select a picture → ■
- **2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Add Stamp \rightarrow$
- 3 Select Phone Memory Memory Card → → Pictures → → Select a stamp → (twice)
- **4** Press (OK)→ (OK)→ Overwrite|Save as New → □

#### Note

• If the size of a stamp is larger than that of the picture, the stamp cannot be added.

#### Tip

- After selecting a stamp, you can press ★ iii or #☆ to change stamps.
- You can use to adjust the position of the stamp.
- To cancel an added stamp, press [37] (Menu) and select *Undo All*.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

Main menu Tools Useful Tools Edit Picture

**2** Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Add Text \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**3** Select a font size → ■ → Enter a text → ■

Changing a Font Color

Press 

(Color) → (1) (1) →

Press ☐ (Color)→ ☐ / ☐ → ■

Changing a Frame Color

Press  $\square$  (Color)  $\rightarrow \square$  /  $\square \square$   $\rightarrow \square$ 

**4** Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow \boxtimes$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ Overwrite|Save as New $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

Tip

You can use to adjust the position of the text.

 If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

### **Applying a Mosaic**

Apply a mosaic to part of an image.

Main ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

**2** Press [m] (Menu) $\rightarrow Mosaic \rightarrow [m]$ 

**3** Press **●** (twice)→**■** (OK)→OverwritelSave as New → **●** 

Tip

Use to adjust the mosaic position.

• The size of the mosaic can be changed by pressing (Range) and then . At this time move the frame by pressing (Move).

 After applying a mosaic, press and make fine adjustments to the mosaic.

 If you selected Save as New, input the file name, press and select the save location.

Camera

### **Rotating a Picture**

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- 2 Press ☑ (Menu)→Rotate Image→ → ☑ (昼 ♡ ▲)/ ☑ (▲ ♡ ▶) → ■
- **3** Press  $\square$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ Overwrite|Save as New $\rightarrow$  $\blacksquare$

#### Tip

 If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# **Compounding Pictures**

Compound two pictures.

Main menu 

Tools 

Useful Tools 

Edit Picture

- 2 Press ☑ (Menu)→Overlay→ →Phone Memoryl

  Memory Card → →Select a picture → ■

  Adjusting the Transparent Rate

  Press ☑ / □ ■

**3** Press  $\bigcirc \rightarrow \boxtimes$  (OK) $\rightarrow Overwritel Save as New \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

### Tip

- The size of a picture must be the same as that of a picture being edited.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# Mixing Pictures to Create Wallpaper

Mix four pictures to create wallpaper.



- **1** Select *Wallpaper*→•
- **3** Select pictures for [2] to [4]

Repeat Step 2.

- To unset a picture, press [17] (Delete).
- Press  $extbf{ extbf{ iny }}$  (OK)→Phone MemorylMemory Card →  $extbf{ extbf{ extbf{ iny }}}$

#### Tip

# **About Media Player**

Media Player enables playback and streaming of audio/video files stored in the handset or the memory card. Messages can be created while listening to a music file.

- Media Player supports 3GPP, 3GPP2, MP4 and SMC file formats. However, some files cannot be played depending on the file type. For details, refer to the Reatlam 2007 for 911T Guide Rook
- You cannot automatically receive S! Mail (page 17-23) while streaming.
- You can connect your handset to your PC with the USB cable and transfer music files to your handset. For details on transferring music files, see page 11-12.
- Use Stereo Earphone (optional) and Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Stereo Headset (optional) for a wireless connection. A2DP profile compatible Bluetooth® headsets can be used to accept incoming voice calls while playing music files.
- Background playback may be paused or stopped depending on the type of function used during background playback (page 8-11). For example, if you launch S! Appli, background playback is paused.
- Media Player cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery pack to use Media Player.

# Playback Window **=** =12:3 -Videol/Artist (3) (4) **●**→ • 0:0:0/0:05:16 (7)(8) (9)(10) (11)

- ①Title
- ③Playback image
- (4)Play mode
  - AII
- Repeat
- Repeat All

Video File Playback Window

2)Artist name/Album name

Random 1 Current Only (5) File number/total number of files

Music File Playback Window

- 6 Help guidance
- (7)Web Link (9)Voice Cancel

(8) Playback volume

(11)Equalizer

(10)Surround

- (12) Playback status
- Forwarding
- Paused

- ▶ Playing Rewinding Slow playback
  - Buffering
    - Stop

- (13) Elapsed playback time/Total playback time
- (14) Progress bar
- (15) File name/Artist name
- **16** Video Display

# **Playing Music & Videos**

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select Audio/Videos→
■

#### **Disc Search**

Files in *Ring Song•Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed by artist or album.

#### All Music

All files in *Ring Song • Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed at once.

#### Artist/Album/Folder

Files in *Ring Song • Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed by artist, album or folder.

#### Videos

Select **Phone Memory**/**Memory Card**→

Files in **Videos** folder of Data Folder are displayed.

# **2** Select a file→

- To end Media Player, press 🚟.
- If a music file contains lyric data, display the lyrics by pressing or per during playback (page 8-4).
- If a music file includes a jacket photo, the jacket photo appears on the display when the file is selected on the file list. Press □

  during playback to switch the jacket photo.

#### Tip

- Pressing 👺 in Standby also displays the Audio menu.
- When manner mode is set to Silent or Alarms (page 12-1), a
  confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
  select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode.
  However, a confirmation window is not displayed when earphones are
  connected.
- If you press and hold is in Standby, you can resume playing a music file that you played last.
- When a file is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

#### To Playlist/Sort by/Buy Key/Details/Change View

 While playing/paused, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

Search Time/Play Mode/Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel/ Change Jacket/To Playlist/Web Link/Details/Mute/Unmute/ Normal Screen/Full Screen/Show Icons/Hide Icons/Display Link

### **Audio Output**

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select  $Audio \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Output \ Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select Speaker|Earphone or Wireless→

■

If you select *Wireless*, select a wireless device from the list of paired devices (page 11-6). When using the Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional), see page 8-4.

### Setting the Wallpaper Displayed during Music Playback

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select  $Audio \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Player Image \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**2** Select *NormallKu-man*→

## **Operations during Playback**

Functions	Operation while stopped/paused	Operation during playing
Return to the beginning of a file/ Skip to previous	Press ★ ***/•□	Press <del>¥ is</del> / ●□
Skip to next	Press #A/a / D	Press #A/m
Forward	Press and hold •*1*2*3	Press and hold 🕒
Rewind	Press and hold • *1*2*3	Press and hold •
Rewind video frame by frame (only video files)	Press ••• *2	_
Forward video frame by frame (only video files)	Press • *2	_
Slow Playback (only video files)	Press and hold • *2	_
Adjust volume	Use 📮	Use 📮
View operation guide	Press [1.%]	Press [1.**]

<sup>\*1</sup> Operation is available for music files only.

<sup>\*2</sup> Operation is possible only when playback is paused.

<sup>\*3</sup> Operation is unavailable when using Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional).

#### Tip

• The following shortcuts can be assigned during music or video playback.

Key	During music file playback	During video file playback
ロテひ 文字	Background Play	_
(Press and hold)	My Library	AV Output
¥ .°	Previous File	
# A/a	Next File	
I .*	Key Guide	
2 ABC	Play Mode	_
∃ č	Surround	Mute/Unmute
니た	Equalizer	Screen Display
5 t	Voice Cancel	_
T <sub>rons</sub>	Lyric [Previous]	_
B.t.v	Change Jacket	_
9 S	Lyric [Next]	_
	_	Icons Display

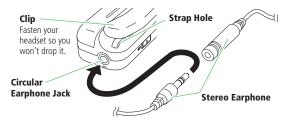
# Using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

Using the stereo earphone (optional) in combination with Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional) allows you to wirelessly listen to music files played by Media Player.

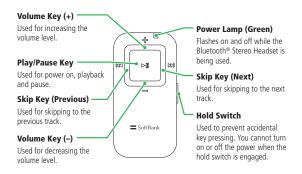
### **Connecting Stereo Earphone**

Insert stereo earphone cable into the circular earphone jack on the side of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

If you separate the stereo earphone at the position shown in the figure, you can see the circular earphone plug. Bluetooth® Stereo Headset can be connected there.



#### Bluetooth® Stereo Headset Parts & Functions



### **Turning Power On/Off**

Press ▷∭ on your Bluetooth® Stereo Headset.

The power lamp (green) flashes on and off and indicates the power is on. To turn the power off, press (G) (or (G)) and (G) at the same time.

#### Tip

 If no music file is played on Media Player for more than 10 minutes, it shuts down.

### Registering a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

Follow the steps below when you connect a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset to your handset and use it for the first time.

 When you register for the first time, leave your Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Stereo Headset turned off.



1 Press ⋈ (or ⋈) and ⋈ of a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset at the same time

The power lamp (green) will flash on and off quickly and go in standby to accept Bluetooth® connection requests.

- Complete all the steps after Step 2 within one minute.
- **2** Select Search Device→
- **3** Select Stereo Headset→ •
- 4 Enter 1234 (passing key)  $\rightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  YES/NO  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - If you select YES, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

### Using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

- 1 Turn Bluetooth® Stereo Headset on
- **2** Play a music file with Media Player (page 8-2)

#### Tip

If you have a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset connected, play music files
with Media Player. If you are playing music files from *Music* folder of
Data Folder and are using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset, you will only be
able to play one track only. Consecutive playback of multiple tracks is
not supported.

### Locking a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

Bluetooth® Stereo Headsets have a hold switch to prevent accidental key pressing.

To lock all keys, move the hold switch to " \mathbb{g}".

# **Using Playlists**

Using playlists, you will be able to create a list of your favorite songs and play them as a set. Add music files to playlists by all tracks at once by artist or by album. Besides playlists that you created in advance, there is also My Library playlist where the current music file being played can be added (page 8-9).

### **Creating a Playlist**

Create up to ten playlists in your handset. Also create up to ten playlists in a memory card. Each playlist can contain up to 50 tracks.

- In Standby, press  $\stackrel{\text{\tiny IDO}}{\Longrightarrow} \rightarrow Playlist \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Press ☑ (Menu)→New Playlist→ →Phone Memory|Memory Card → ■
- **3** Enter a playlist name  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
- **4** Select *All Music*→

**Selecting by Artist/by Album**Select *Artist/Album* → Select an artist/album → ■

- **5** Select a music file→
  - To add another file, repeat Step 5.
- 6 Press 
  ☐ (Create)

### **Playing a Playlist**

- 1 In Standby, press  $\stackrel{\text{\tiny CPU}}{\Longrightarrow} \rightarrow Playlist \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Select a playlist→ (Play)

Tip

- When manner mode is set to Silent or Alarms (page 12-1), a
  confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
  select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode.
  However, a confirmation window is not displayed when earphone is
  connected.
- When a playlist is selected, press v (Menu) to perform the following:
   Delete/Copy/Rename/New Playlist/Change Order

### **Editing a Playlist**

- 2 Select a playlist

#### **Editing a Playlist Name**

Press  $\P$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Rename $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$ Edit a playlist name $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

#### **Deleting**

Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow [\bullet] \rightarrow YES \rightarrow [\bullet]$ 

#### Copying

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Copy $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ Phone Memory/Memory Card  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **Adding Tracks to Playlist**

Press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Add Tracks  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All Music  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Select a file  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Add)

 To select music files by artist or album, select Artist/Album and select an artist/album.

#### **Deleting Tracks of a Playlist**

Press  $\longrightarrow$   $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Remove Tracks $\rightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  One $\rightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

- To delete multiple tracks, select *Select Multi*, select files you want to delete, and press (Delete).
- If you delete all tracks on a playlist, the playlist will be deleted, too.
   Changing the Playing Order of a Playlist

Press  $\longrightarrow$  Select a track $\longrightarrow$   $\boxtimes$  (Change) $\longrightarrow$  Use  $\bigoplus$  to select the position to which to move the track $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Tip

 If you delete a file from a playlist, the original music file will not be deleted.

# **Accessing Recently Played Files**

Display the 20 most recent music and video files played.

Main menu ► Media Player

**1** Select  $Audio \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Playlist \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Recent \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Accessing the Recently Played Video Files Select  $Videos \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Recent \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select$  a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow Select$ 

#### qiT

- Only playable files are saved to the list of recently played files.
- If you play the same file more than once, the most recent record is saved to the list.
- When a file is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

#### To Playlist/Delete/View Type/Details

 While playing, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

Search Time/Play Mode/Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel/ Change Jacket/To Playlist/Web Link/Details/Mute/Unmute/ Normal Screen/Full Screen/Show Icons/Hide Icons/Display Link

# **Downloading Music and Video Files**

Download music and video files from Yahoo! Keitai, etc.

Main Media Player

- **1** Select Audio/Videos→
  ■
- 2 Select Download Music|Download Videos → → YES → ■ Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Streaming

Access Web pages for streaming music/video files.

- Packet transmission fees apply even if playback is paused because the handset continues network communication.
- When manner mode is set to Silent or Alarms (page 12-1), a confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily, select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode. However, a confirmation window is not displayed when the earphone is connected

Main menu ► Media Player

**1** Select Streaming  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter\ URL \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter\ URL$ 

#### Streaming from Bookmark URL

Access the bookmarked Web Pages for streaming.

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select  $Streaming \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**2** Select a Bookmark→

■

### Streaming from URLs Streamed

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select Streaming  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Recent \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**2** Select a title→

### Streaming from Links in Messages and Web Pages

Play stream content by selecting a link.

Streaming from the Internet

Display a link→

■

Operations may vary depending on the website.

# **Other Operations & Settings**

### Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist

Add up to 50 tracks to My Library playlist by simply pressing while a music file is being played.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press and hold [87]

### Adding a Music File Being Played to a Playlist

Add a music file being played or paused to a playlist.

While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu)

→ To Playlist → ■

**2** Select a Playlist→

■

# **Switching Play Modes**

**1** While a music file is playing/paused, press <u>w</u> (Menu) → Play Mode → ■

**2** Select a Play mode→■

8

### **Using Search Time**

Specify a position (time) from which you want to play a file.

- **1** While a file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu)→
  Search Time→ ■
- 2 Enter a position (time) from which you want to play a file→

  ■

A file is played from the position you entered.

#### **Setting the Surround**

Expand the spatial imaging of playback.

- 1 While a music file is playing/paused, press ★ (Menu)

  → Surround → •
- **2** Select a surround type→ •

### Setting the Equalizer

Boost certain frequencies of playback.

- **1** While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu) → Equalizer → ■
- **2** Select an equalizer type or genre→

### Setting the Voice Cancel

Reduce the vocal level of playback and emphasize the instruments.

- While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu)

  → Voice Cancel → ■
- **2** Select *ON/OFF* → •

#### Tic

- Voice Cancel may be unavailable for certain music files.
- Setting Voice Cancel to ON while playing a monaural music file will decrease the volume of playback sound.

### **Sending Files**

Send music or video files to other mobile phones or infrared/Bluetooth® compatible devices (optional).

Main Data Folder

- **1** Select *Ring Song Tone|Music|Videos* → → Select a music/video file → [\sqrt{p}] (Menu) → Send → ■
- **2** Select the transmission method→
  - See page 11-2 for infrared communication and page 11-7 for Bluetooth® communication.

### **Viewing Property**

Detailed information about a music or video file is displayed.

**1** Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Details \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Tip

The file name and size, playback time, etc. are displayed in the property.
 Displayed items vary depending on the file type.

### **Switching to Background Playback**

Switch to background playback in order to use other functions.

diT

 You can switch to background playback by pressing while a music file is being played, too. If you press again in Standby during background playback, Media Player will be displayed.

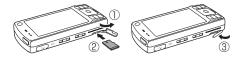
# **About Memory Card**

The pictures you take, videos you record and various downloaded files can be saved to a memory card.

- This manual refers to a microSD<sup>TM</sup> memory card as a "memory card".
- For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function.
- Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of February, 2007). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.

### Inserting a Memory Card

Insert a memory card after turning off the handset. Otherwise, files on the memory card may be lost.



- 1 Open the memory card slot cover (1)
- **2** Gently push a memory card into the slot until it clicks into position, making sure the gold terminal is facing down (②)
- **3** Close the memory card slot cover (③)

#### Note

 Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.

### **Removing a Memory Card**

When you remove the memory card from the handset, follow the reverse procedure of inserting it.

#### Vote

- Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.
- If your hand is released after pushing in the memory card lightly with your finger, the memory card comes out a little from the handset when removing.
- The memory card may pop out abruptly when removing it from your handset. Be cautious when ejecting the memory card.

# **Using a Memory Card**

Check and edit pictures and other data saved to a memory card. Also save a backup of Data Folder, Phone Book and other data in your handset to a memory card (pages 4-9, 10-11).

- If the battery level is low, your handset may not read or write files.
- Never remove the memory card or battery pack while files are being accessed or formatting. Damage to memory card may result and files/data may be lost.
- Processing may take a while for some types of files.
- Files on the memory card may be changed or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- Some files saved from a PC or other device may not be displayed/played on your handset.
- Among files on the memory card, the files with a name using more than 32 characters are not displayed.
- If the same name is used for more than one file or folder on the memory card using double-byte characters regardless of upper case or lower case, the name may not be displayed correctly on your PC or other device.
- Do not put labels or stickers on the memory card.

# **Memory Card Configuration**

The folder tree on the memory card is shown below.

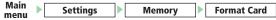
Folder Name	Description
CIM DCIM	Stores pictures taken in Digital mode (page 7-5).
PRIVATE	
MYFOLDER	
Mail	The configuration is identical to Message Box (page 17-11) on your handset.
My Items	Stores folders (Pictures, My Pictograms, Videos, Ring Song · Tone, Music, Templates, Flash(R), Flash(R) Tones, Books, S! Appli, Other Documents) of memory card Data Folder (page 10-1). Bookmark backup files are also stored.
□ TS_Folder	Stores setting data of which backups are made with Relocate function (page 14-31), files for Gamendeco, and files which can be viewed only from the Media Player.
Utility	
Calendar	Stores appointment backup files.
Contacts	Stores Phone Book data and backup files.
Memo	Stores Notepad backup files.
Rights	Stores Content Key backup files.
Tasks	Stores Tasks backup files.

• Some files cannot be played depending on the file type.

### **Formatting a Memory Card**

Formatting a memory card deletes all data in the memory card.

 If a memory card is formatted by another device, it may not work properly with your handset. Be sure to use your handset to format a memory card.



**1** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ *YES* $\rightarrow$ 

### **Checking Stored Files**

#### **Checking Files on the Memory Card**

Main menu Data Folder

Press 🕒

**2** Select a folder→

■

**3** Select a file→

# **Confirming Memory Card Usage Status**



**1** Select *Memory Card*→

Tip

 You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below.

Main menu o *Data Folder* o o *Memory Status* Press o to toggle between handset and memory card status.

### **Data Folder**

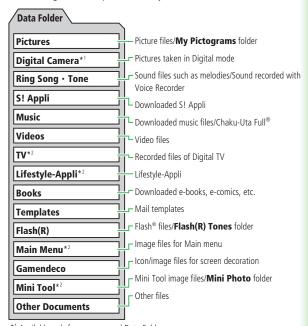
Data Folder of your handset stores the pictures you take, videos you record, files you receive from external devices, files you download from the Web, etc. Saved files can be used as wallpaper and ringtones, or attached to messages (page 17-7).

Data Folder capacity is 1 GB or approximately 2,500 items (excluding S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli), including personal folders. Up to approximately 100 S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli items can be stored in Data Folder.

 Pictures/My Pictograms/Ring Song · Tone/S! Appli/Music/Videos/ Lifestyle-Appli/Books/Templates folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai download site.

### Structure of Data Folder

The following folders are preinstalled in your handset.



<sup>\*1</sup> Available only for memory card Data Folder

<sup>\*2</sup> Available only for handset Data Folder

### Files Storable in Data Folder

The following files are stored on the corresponding folder in Data Folder.

Folder	File Format (Extension)	Page
Pictures*1	<ul><li>☑ JPEG (.JPEG, .JPG, .JPE)</li><li>☑ GIF (.GIF)</li><li>☑ PNG (.PNG)</li></ul>	10-3
My Pictograms	GIF (.GIF)     GPK (.GPK)	
Digital Camera*2		9-2
Ring Song • Tone*1	<ul> <li>         ⊕ AMR (.AMR)     </li> <li>         ↓ SMAF (.MMF)         <ul> <li>MPEG-4*4 (.3GP, .MP4, .M4A)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	10-4
S! Appli	🎮 Java (.JAD, .JAR, .RMS)	19-1
Music*1	MPEG-4 (.3GP* <sup>5</sup> , .MP4* <sup>5</sup> , .M4A, .SMC)	10-5
<b>◯</b> Videos*¹		10-5
<b>◯ TV</b> *1*3	■ DTV (.DTV)	10-5
Lifestyle-Appli*3	🎮 Java (.JAD, .JAR, .RMS)	23-3
□ Books*1		10-6
Templates	HTML mail templates (.HMT)	10-6
Flash(R)*1	Ø SWF (.SWF)	10.6
Flash(R) Tones	Ringtone Flash® (.SWF)	10-6
Main Menu*1*3	🔢 Image files for Main menu (.TMF)	10-7

Folder	File Format (Extension)	Page
<b>□</b> Gamendeco*¹		10-7
Mini Tool*1*3	Mini Tool image files (.TGF)	10-7
Mini Photo*3	Animation files for Mini Tool (.TFF)	10-7
Other Documents*1	VCard (.VCF)     VCalendar (.VCS, .ICS)     VMessage (.VMG)     EML (.EML)     VNote (.VNT)     Text (.TXT)     PDF (.PDF)     Word (.DOC)     Excel (.XLS)     PowerPoint® (.PPT)     Other files*6 (other extensions)	10-7, 10-8

<sup>\*1</sup> Folders can be created in each folder.

<sup>\*2</sup> Only Data Folder on the memory card can be viewed. Files that do not comply with the DCF standard cannot be displayed.

<sup>\*3</sup> Only Data Folder on the handset can be viewed.

<sup>\*4</sup> Playback of some files may not be possible.

<sup>\*5</sup> Only Chaku-Uta® files are saved.

<sup>\*6</sup> The files cannot be displayed/played on your handset.

#### Note

- Files on the handset may be changed or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- Files which require content usage rights will have " " " displayed next to the icons on the left side of file names. If you do not have a content key, press (Menu) and select Buy Key in order to obtain a content key.

#### Tip

- Chaku-Uta®, S! Appli, video and other files saved to the handset or memory card may become inaccessible after handset repairs or when USIM card is replaced.
- You may not be able to open a file on a PC, PDA, or other device if: You change the file name on your handset or the file name includes a
   "~" or "—".
- DCF is an abbreviation for "Design rule for Camera File system," a standard developed by the Japan Electronic Industry Development Association (JEIDA) for the purpose of facilitating the transfer of digital camera images among various devices.
- Whether a file can be sent via infrared/Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> communication or moved to the memory card depends on the forwarding and memory card forwarding permission properties. However, the files in the *My Pictograms* folder can be sent via infrared/Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> communication even if the forwarding property is *Unavailable*.
- Flash<sup>®</sup> is an animation technology that combines images and sound.

# **Using Files & Folders**

### **Opening Files**

Main menu

**▶** Data Folder

**1** Select a folder→

**2** Select a file→ ■

#### Connecting to the Web from Folders

Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai download site directly from *Pictures/My Pictograms/Ring Song·Tone/S! Appli/Music/Videos/Lifestyle-Appli/Books/Templates* folders.

### When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed

Press 🗺 (Menu) to perform the following:

**Send**: The following items are displayed.

● As Mail : Send via S! Mail (page 17-7). ● Via Infrared : Send via infrared (page 11-2).

•Via Bluetooth :Send via Bluetooth® (page 11-7).

**Set as**: The following items are displayed.

● **Wallpaper** : Set the selected file as the wallpaper for Standby.

•In-Calls : Set the selected file as the in-call image.

Messages : Set the selected file as the message receiving image.

**Edit Picture**: Edit the selected image (page 7-22).

Location: View location information for the selected picture file or connect

to the web and display a map.

**Delete**: The following items are displayed.

• One : Delete the selected file (page 10-13).

● Select Multi : Select multiple files and then simultaneously delete

(page 10-13).

• All : Delete all files (page 10-13).

**Rename**: Change the name of the selected file (page 10-12).

**Copy**: The following items are displayed.

•One : Copy the selected file (page 10-14).

● Select Multi : Select multiple files and then simultaneously copy

(page 10-14).

•All : Copy all files (page 10-14).

**Move**: The following items are displayed.

One : Move the selected file (page 10-13).

 Select Multi: Select multiple files and then simultaneously move (page 10-13).

● All : Move all files (page 10-13). Change View: The following items are displayed.

• View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 10-9).

**Sort by** : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

10-15).

• Slideshow : Display the pictures in the folder in sequence

automatically (page 10-15).

Create Folder: Create a new folder (page 10-12).

Buy Key: Obtain a content key.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, available/unavailable to save photo, and setting information).

### When Melody Files are Selected/Played

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

voice/video calls, messages, delivery check messages, missed calls. Circle Talk calls or Hot Status notifications.

•Sound Effects: Set the selected file as power on/off, opening or closing tone.

**Show Icons/Hide Icons**: Switch the display of icons on the playback window

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by*, *Create Folder* or *Buy Key*.

#### When Music Files are Selected/Played

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

Voice CallSet the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.Video CallSet the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.

● **Message** : Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving

messages.

**DeliveryCheck**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check

messages.

lacktriangle lacktriangle : Set the selected file as the ringtone for missed calls

(page 16-5).

Circle TalkSet the selected file as the ringtone for Circle Talk calls.Hot StatusSet the selected file as the ringtone for Hot Status

notifications.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, file type, title, artist, album name, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by*, *Create Folder* or *Buy Key*.

#### When Video Files are Selected/Played

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.

 Video Call : Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.

● Message : Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving

messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

Change View: The following items are displayed.

**View Type** : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 10-9).

**Sort by** : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

10-15).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, file type, title, creator, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Create Folder* or *Buy Key*.

### When Digital TV Recording Files are Selected

Press 🕶 (Menu) to perform the following:

**Change View**: The following items are displayed.

● View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 10-9).

**Sort by** : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

10-15).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, title, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, file type, create date, and available/unavailable to play/ view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Delete*, *Rename*, *Move* or *Create Folder*.

#### When Book Files are Selected/Displayed

Press [97] (Menu) to perform the following:

**Change View**: The following items are displayed.

● View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 10-9).

**Sort by** : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

10-15).

Web Link: Connect to the specified Website.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, creator, authority\*, seller\*, publisher\*, episode, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, description, and vender).

\* These items do not appear for some types of book files.

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about **Send**, **Delete**, **Rename**, **Copy**, **Move**, **Create Folder** or **Buy Key**.

### When Templates are Selected/Displayed

Press [17] (Menu) to perform the following:

Create Mail: Create a message using selected templates.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*,

Delete, Rename, Copy, Move or Sort by.

#### When Flash® Files are Selected/Displayed

Press [97] (Menu) to perform the following:

**Set Wallpaper**\*1: Set the selected file as the wallpaper for Standby.

**Set as\***<sup>2</sup>: The following items are displayed.

Voice Call
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.
 Messsage
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving

messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by*, *Create Folder\** 3 or *Buy Key*.

\*1 Unavailable for files saved in Flash(R) Tones folder.

<sup>\*2</sup> Available only for files saved in Flash(R) Tones folder.

<sup>\*3</sup> The folder can be created only in a Flash(R) folder.

#### When Main Menu/Mini Tool Image Files are Selected/Displayed

Press [37] (Menu) to perform the following:

**Set as Menu**\*1: Set the selected file for Main menu.

**Set Mini Tool**\*<sup>2</sup>: Set the selected file for Mini Tool. **Change View**: The following items are displayed.

• View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text and guide) (page 10-9).

allu guide) (page 10-9)

**Sort by** : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

10-15).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Delete*, *Rename Move* or *Create Folder*.

#### When Files for Gamendeco are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

**Gamendeco**: Set the icons/images of the Main Screen (page 12-6).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by* or *Create Folder*.

#### When vObjects are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

#### To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/To Notepad/To Message/

**To Bookmarks**: Save vObjects to the Calendar or Phone Book, etc (page 10-11).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by* or *Create Folder*.

#### When Text Files are Selected/Displayed

Press [37] (Menu) to perform the following:

**Encoding Type**: Change character encoding type.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by*, *Create Folder* or *Buy Key*.

#### Tip

 Depending on file size and number of text lines, a file may not be played.

<sup>\*1</sup> Appears for Main menu image files only.

<sup>\*2</sup> Appears for Mini Tool image files only.

#### When Document Files are Selected

Press [97] (Menu) to perform the following:

**Sort by**: Changes the order of files in specified condition (page 10-15).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move* or *Sort by*.

### **Displaying a PC Document**

A PC document is a document or a PDF file created on a personal computer. Your handset can display Microsoft® Office Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, and PDF document files

#### Displaying a Document File

Display of the following file formats (extensions) is supported: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Word (.doc), Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Excel (.xls), Microsoft<sup>®</sup> PowerPoint<sup>®</sup> (.ppt), and PDF (.pdf).

Main menu Data Folder

**1** Select *Other Documents* → **●** → Select a document file → **●** 

### Operations While a Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, or PDF File is Displayed

Function	Operation (Word, Excel, PowerPoint® File)	Operation (PDF File)
Scroll up, down, left, right	Press 😳	Press 🐏
Enlarge page	Press	Press
Reduce page	Press ⊠	Press ■
Display actual size*	Press [1.5]	Press [1.89]
Display entire page	_	Press 2 ABC
Rotate 90 degrees right	Press 🖃	Press 🖃 🛎
Go to previous page/sheet/slide	Press 4 🖺	Press 4 to
Show bookmarks	_	Press 5 %
Go to next page/sheet/slide	Press 🖦	Press 🖦
Go to first page/sheet/slide	Press Tages	Press Talk
Search	Press 🖽	Press 🖽
Go to last page/sheet/slide	Press 9 5	Press 9.5.
Go to specific page/sheet/slide	Press 📭	Press 📭

<sup>\*</sup> Valid when display is reduced or enlarged only

#### Note

- Document file contents may be different from how they appear on your PC.
- Some document files may take a long time to appear.

Tip

 Select a document file and press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file, some items are not displayed):
 Move/View/Rotate View/Search/Key Guide/Version Info./ Slideshow/Index/Layout/File Info.

### Changing the View Format of Data Folder

Select the list view or thumbnail view to see a list of files contained in *Pictures, My Pictograms, Digital Camera, Videos , TV, Books, Main Menu, Mini Tool* and *Mini Photo* folders.

Main menu Data Folder

- 1 Select Pictures|My Pictograms|Digital Camera|
  Videos|TV|Books|Main Menu|Mini Tool|Mini Photo
  → → ▼ (Menu)
- 2 Select Change View  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow View \ Type \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  the view type  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

### Displaying the Memory Usage Status

Check the memory space used in Data Folder.

Main menu ► Settings ► Memory ► Memory Status

- **1** Select Data Folder  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 
  - Press 🔀 (Count) to check how many files are stored.

Tip

 You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below. Press to switch screens to check the used space on the handset and the memory card.

Main menu → Data Folder → Memory Status

### Displaying the File Properties

Main menu Data Folder

- Select a folder→
- **2** Select a file→ (Menu)→Details→

# **Using Picture Files**

Use picture files stored in Data Folder for wallpaper, incoming images, video calls, Phone Book (picture), and so on.

### 1 Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on setting the wallpaper, see page 12-5.
- For details on setting the incoming image, see page 12-6.
- For details on the video call setting, see page 5-4.
- For details on setting Phone Book pictures, see page 4-2.
- **2** Select *Pictures* → → Select a file → ●
- 3 Use ♣ to adjust the position of the image to clip

  ¬¬¬ (Cut)→¬¬
  - For details on changing image size, see page 7-22.

#### Note

 If an animation GIF is selected, only the first image (still image) is displayed.

#### Tip

- Some functions may not allow you to change image size.
- If the image size cannot be changed, animation GIF files are displayed as animations.

# Using Melody, Music/Videos/Flash® Files

Melody files, music files, and video files in Data Folder can be used as ringtone, incoming image and alarm sound, etc. Also, Flash® files in the *Flash(R)* folder can be specified for wallpaper, and files in the *Main Menu* folder can be specified for the Main menu image.

### Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on the Main menu image setting, see page 1-19.
- For details on the sound setting, see page 12-3.
- For details on the Wallpaper setting, see page 12-5.
- For details on setting the schedule alarm tone, see page 14-14.
- For details on setting the alarm tone, see page 14-6.
- For details on setting a different ringtone for each Phone Book entry, see page 4-3.
- 2 Select Ring Song TonelMusic|Videos|Flash(R)|
  Flash(R) Tones|Main Menu→ → Select a file→
  (twice)

# **Using vObjects**

### About vObjects

vObject is a collective name for file formats that enable your handset and other vObject compatible SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to exchange and mutually use data such as Phone Book entries, Calendar and Task data. vObjects can be sent and received as mail attachments (page 17-7) or transfer them by Infrared (page 11-2)/Bluetooth® (page 11-7). If you save vObjects to a memory card, you will be able to use them directly from other memory card compatible handsets, PCs and other devices.

- vObject compatible software is required to use the data of vObjects on a PC or other device.
- Depending on the contents of vObjects, the exchange of vObjects between a vObject compatible handset and PC or other device may not be possible.
- When vObjects include many characters, all vObjects may not be able to be sent or received.
- Depending on the software used, vObjects may not be displayed properly.

## Creating a vObject

Display a Phone Book (chapter 4)/Calendar (page 14-10)/Tasks (page 14-19)/Message (page 17-11)/ Bookmark (page 18-5)/Notepad (page 14-8) data Creating One vObject

Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Export \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### **Creating Multiple vObjects**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Export  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select files  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Save)/ $\bigcirc$  (Export)

### **Creating All Files as vObjects**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Export \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select *Phone Memory|Data Folder|Memory Card*→

Select a folder→

■

### Importing a vObject into a Function

Main menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Other Documents

### **Importing One vObject**

Select a vObject→ ☑ (Menu)→To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/
To Message/To Bookmarks/To Notepad→ ■→One→ ■
Importing Multiple vObjects

Press ☑ (Menu)→*To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/To Message/To Bookmarks/To Notepad*→ ■ →*Select Multi*→ ■ →Select vObjects → ■ → ☑ (Save)

# **Editing Files & Folders**

- You cannot create a folder with the same name in the same folder.
- ◆ You cannot use the following single-byte symbols, pictographs and line break icon "→" for a folder name. "\/¥::?" <> I. \*

### **Adding Folders**

A new folder can be created in the *Pictures*, *Ring Song* • *Tone*, *Music*, *Videos*, *TV*, *Books*, *Flash*(*R*), *Main Menu*, *Gamendeco*, *Mini Tool* or *Other Documents* folders.

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select a folder→
- **2** Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbf{y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Create\ Folder \rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Enter a folder name→

Tip

You can also create folders by pressing (Menu) and selecting
 Create Folder while the Downloaded item in a folder or a folder itself is selected.

### **Changing Folder/File Name**

Main menu Data Folder

#### **Changing Folder Name**

Select the folder you created  $\rightarrow \overline{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Rename Folder*  $\rightarrow$  Enter a folder name  $\rightarrow$ 

 If folder security is set (page 10-15), a window appears in which you enter your security code for the operation (page 1-22) after you select Rename Folder

### **Changing File Name**

### **Deleting Folders/Files**

### **Deleting Folders**

Main menu Data Folder

- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

### **Deleting Files**

Main menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder→

# **Deleting One File**

### **Deleting Multiple Files**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select files  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$ 

### **Deleting All Files**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **All**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

### Tip

 If you try to delete a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you delete the file, the setting is reset to the default.

# **Moving Folders**

Move the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select the folder you created→¬¬ (Menu)→Move Folder→¬¬
- 2 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

### Tip

- If you try to move a folder containing a picture or melody file which is
  used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move
  the folder, the setting is reset to the default.
- A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be moved.
   Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to move.

# **Moving Files**

Move files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder→

# **Moving One File**

## **Moving Multiple Files**

Press  $\textcircled{\ }$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Move**  $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{\ }$   $\rightarrow$  Select **Multi**  $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{\ }$   $\rightarrow$  Select files  $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{\ }$   $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{\ }$  (Move)

# **Moving All Files**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Move* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ *All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-22)

- **2** Select *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→

  ■
- **3** Select the destination folder→

Creating a New Folder to which a File is Moved

Press 
☐ (Create) → Enter a folder name → ■

• When you move a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a music file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP, .MP4 and .M4A) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

• If you try to move a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move the file, the setting is reset to the default.

# Copying Folders

Copy the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main Data Folder menu

- Select the folder you created  $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Copv$ Folder→ ■
- Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ *Phone* Memory|Memory Card→
- Select the destination folder→
  - You can select either **Ring Song Tone** folder or **Music** folder as a copy destination folder.

• A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be copied. Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to copy.

# **Copying Files**

Copy files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main Data Folder menu

Select a folder→

**Copying One File** 

Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Copy \rightarrow \bigcirc One \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**Copying Multiple Files** 

Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Copy \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select files → (□ ) → □ (Copy)

**Copying All Files** 

Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Copv \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter vour security$ code (page 1-22)

- **Select** *Phone Memory* Memory  $Card \rightarrow [ \bullet ]$
- Select the destination folder→

Creating a New Folder to which a File is Copied

Press 

(Create)→Enter a folder name→

(□

### Note

- If Details indicate that the file is *Unavailable* for forward, the file cannot be copied. However, files in *My Pictograms* folder may be able to be copied even if Details indicate that it is *Unavailable* for the forward.
- When you copy a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP and .MP4) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

# **Setting Folder Security**

 If folder security is set, a window appears in which you enter your security code for operation (page 1-22) when you select the folder.

Main menu Data Folder

- 1 Select the folder you created→ w (Menu)→ Security Lock→ ■
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

# Other Functions

# **Playing Slide Show**

Display picture files in succession about every two seconds.

Main Data Folder Pictures

- **1** Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Change View  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select *Slideshow*→

Changing the Order of Files within the Selected Folder

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select a folder→
- **3** Select a sort option→
  - Files in the memory card cannot be sorted by titles.

# **Infrared**

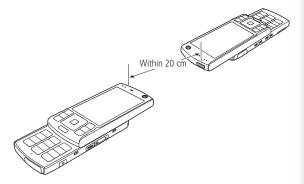
Use infrared to exchange the Calendar data of your handset, Phone Book entries of your handset, memory card or USIM card, pictures/videos taken or recorded with the camera and Data Folder data that can be forwarded with an infrared compatible handset, PC or other device.

#### Tip

 The infrared function of your handset complies with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.

### Precautions

- A dirty Infrared Port may cause an infrared communication failure. If the Infrared Port is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft cloth while making sure not to scratch the port.
- Do not move the devices until the file transfer is complete.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light may interfere with infrared communication.
- If the handset receives a call/video call while it is sending or receiving files via infrared communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is canceled
- USB and Bluetooth® communication are unavailable during Infrared transfers.
- Bring the Infrared Port of your handset to within 20 cm of the Infrared Port
  of the destination device and align both ports. Make sure no objects are
  placed between them.
- Hot Status and Circle Talk are unavailable during file transfers.



# **Using Infrared**

Files can be sent/received and connected to a dial-up connection via infrared communication. The " indicator appears at the top of the display during transfer.

### **About the Authentication Password**

The authentication password (4 digits) is for sending and receiving all data by infrared communication. When sending or receiving all data, the same authentication password needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

# **Activating Infrared**

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via infrared communication.



1 Select  $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

■ To cancel the infrared communication standby, select OFF.

### Note

- Infrared communication is unavailable when offline mode (page 2-11) is set to ON.
- If the handset does not communicate via infrared communication for three minutes after the infrared communication is ON, the infrared communication standby is canceled automatically.

# **Sending Data**

- 1 Access a function that supports infrared
- **3** Select *Via Infrared* →

#### Note

- The files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

### diT

 A part of vObject information may be deleted or changed on some destination devices.

# Receiving Data

The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (left) is  $\boldsymbol{ON}$ .

- 1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- **2** Select  $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - lacktriangle To reject the reception of files, select NO.
  - When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, schedule, task or memo file, select YES to register it on your Phone Book, schedule, task or memo list.
- **3** Select *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→

  ■

#### Tip

- Some vObject information may not be received.
- Hot Status and Circle Talk are unavailable during file transfers.
- When files other than vObjects are received, they are registered in a
  certain folder depending on the file format (extension) (page 10-2). If
  the handset receives a file with the same name as a file registered in
  Data Folder, the name of the received file may be changed.

### Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

• Some devices may not be able to receive or properly display the entries.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select *Phone BooklCal./Tasks*→
  - When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book. Select Without Image to send the Phone Book entries without images.
  - When transferring schedule/task files, a message appears. Select Without Past to delete past files.
- **3** Enter your authentication password (page 11-1)

## Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, schedules of the Calendar or tasks can be received from another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices. The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (page 11-2) is *ON*.

- In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Enter your authentication password (page 11-1)
- $4. Select Add \rightarrow \bullet$

# Overwriting All Entries Select *Overwrite* $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

### Tip

 While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 13-6) is ON.

# **Using Infrared for Dial-up Connections**

The handset can communicate with a PC via infrared communication if the PC is compatible with infrared communication, and the PC can access the Internet via your handset. For details about settings and operations of a modem on a PC, see the manual for the PC.

The handset can use dial-up connections when the infrared communication setting (page 11-2) is ON.

# In Standby, receive a connection request from an infrared compatible PC

### Note

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that transfers of large files may result in high connection fees.

# Bluetooth®

Transfer Phone Book, picture and other files between your handset and another Bluetooth® compatible device. Also use a handsfree compatible device to make handsfree calls.

 You can connect the stereo earphone and Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Stereo Headset (optional) and play Media Player music files wirelessly (page 8-4).

# **Getting Started**

### **Bluetooth® Communications**

- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending
  on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> connection
  may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.
- Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.

# Handset Bluetooth® Specifications

Communication System	Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> specification Ver.1.2
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Transmission Range*1	Within about 10 meters
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Profiles Supported* <sup>2</sup>	HFP (Hands-Free Profile) HSP (Headset Profile) DUN (Dialup Networking Profile) OPP (Object Push Profile) FTP (File Transfer Profile)* A2DP (Advanced audio Distribution Profile) AVRCP (Audio/Visual Remote Control Profile)
Frequency Band	2.4 GHz (2.402GHz ~ 2.480GHz)

- \*1 Varies depending on obstacles between the communication device and the signal conditions.
- \*2 The specifications of Bluetooth® devices differ according to usage. There are standards for Bluetooth®.
- \*3 Only the server function is supported.

## Frequency

The Bluetooth® system on the handset uses the 2.4 GHz spectrum ranging from 2.402 GHz to 2.480 GHz. Other wireless devices may be using the same frequency. In order to avoid radio interference, note the followings:

• The Bluetooth® system on the handset uses 2.4 GHz. This spectrum is used by industrial, scientific, and medical equipment (microwaves etc.), other radio stations of the same kind, premises radio stations for radio frequency identification which require a license (used in production lines etc.), license

- free specified low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations ("other radio stations") .
- If radio interference occurs between handset and other radio stations, change locations to use the handset, or stop using the handset (stop emitting radio waves) at once.
- 2. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).



This wireless device uses 2.4 GHz spectrum. It employs FH-SS modulation, and causes interference within a 10-meter radius.

### Precautions

- Communication tests have not been performed for all Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> compatible devices. There is no guarantee of connection with all Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices.
- The security function used for wireless communication complies with the standard specifications of Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>. However, take care when using Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> for data communication because, in some cases, security may be inadequate depending on the operating environment and configuration.
- SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any data generated or information leaked during Bluetooth® communication.
- If the handset receives a call/video call while it is sending or receiving files via Bluetooth® communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is cancelled.
- You cannot use infrared communication and USB functions/settings other than the charge function during Bluetooth® communication.
- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 13-6) is ON.

# Using Bluetooth®

Use Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> to connect handset with other Bluetooth compatible devices. Transfer files with compatible devices and make dial-up connections.

### **About the Authentication PIN Code**

Authentication PIN code is a 4 to 16 digit number required to connect to a compatible device. Code must be entered by both devices before connection is established.

You can set a different Bluetooth authentication PIN code on each device.

# Activating Bluetooth®

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via Bluetooth® communication. The " 🚷 " indicator appears at the top of the display during Bluetooth® communication standby.



# **1** Select $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$

lacktriangle To cancel the Bluetooth $^{\otimes}$  communication standby, select OFF.

#### Note

 Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> communication is unavailable when offline mode (page 2-11) is set to ON.

# Pairing with a Bluetooth® Enabled Device

Before establishing a Bluetooth® connection, you need to search for, find and then pair with a Bluetooth® enabled device.

Main 
Main

# **1** Select Search Device→ ■

The handset starts searching for Bluetooth® devices and then the names and icons of devices you can connect to appear.

• The device type icons are as follows:

☐ : PC
☐ : Mobile phone
☐ : Peripherals
☐ : LAN
☐ : Printer
☐ : Other device
☐ : Other device
☐ : Other device

# 2 Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→ → → YES/NO

 $\rightarrow$ 

When the handset is connected to another Bluetooth® compatible device, the device is registered in the paired device list.

 Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on both the sending and receiving devices.

### Note

 An authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) needs to be entered within approximately 30 seconds for security reasons.

#### Tip

- Search for up to 8 devices at a time.
- If the handset cannot obtain the name of a device, a device address is displayed.
- You can register up to 20 Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> compatible devices in the paired device list. If you register the 21st device, the oldest device (excluding trusted devices) is deleted.

# Setting a Bluetooth® Compatible Device as a Trusted Device

If you set a registered Bluetooth® compatible device as a trusted device, a confirmation window is not displayed and a connection is established when a connection request is received from that device.



- **1** Select a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> compatible device→ w (Menu)
- **2** Select Trust Device  $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$

# Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

### **Sending Data**

- Access a function that supports Bluetooth $^{\circ}$   $\rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\hspace{1cm}}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Sendl Send vCard  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\hspace{1cm}}$
- **2** Select *Via Bluetooth*→
- **3** Select the destination device→
  - If the receiving device is not registered, select (Search) and then select the receiving device.

### Note

- Files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during a file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

### Tip

- Depending on the settings of a receiving device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window may appear after selecting the destination device and pressing
- A part of vObject information may be deleted or changed on some destination devices.

# **Receiving Data**

The handset can receive files when the Bluetooth $^{\oplus}$  communication setting (page 11-6) is ON.

In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth $^{\circ}$  compatible device $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

- If the device information of the handset is not registered in the destination device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.
- **2** Select *YES*→
  - To reject the reception of files, select NO.
  - When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, schedule, task or memo file, select YES to register it on your Phone Book, schedule, task or memo.
- **3** Select *Phone Memory Memory Card*→
  - To receive another file, repeat Steps 2 and 3.

#### Note

• The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

### Tir

- Return the handset to Standby before receiving a connection request from another Bluetooth® compatible device.
- Some vObject information may not be received.
- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 13-6) is ON.

### Tip

 When files other than vObjects are received, they are registered in a certain folder depending on the file format (extension) (page 10-2). If the handset receives a file with the same name as a file registered in a Data Folder, the name of the received file may be changed.

# Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another Bluetooth® compatible handset.

• Some devices may not be able to receive or properly display the entries.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select *Phone BooklCal./Tasks*→
  - When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send images registered in the Phone Book. Select Without Image to send the Phone Book entries without images.
  - When you send schedules/tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send past schedules. Select Without Past to send schedules without including past schedules.

# **3** Select the destination device→

- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on both the sending and receiving devices.

### Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be received from another Bluetooth® compatible handset.

The handset can receive files when the Bluetooth $^{\circ}$  communication setting (page 11-6) is ON.

# 1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth $^{\circ}$ compatible device $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$

- If the device information of the handset is not registered in the destination device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.
- **2** Select  $Add \rightarrow \blacksquare$

# **Overwriting All Entries by Received Files**

Select  $Overwrite \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

### Note

• The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

#### Tip

 While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 13-6) is ON.

# **Connecting to an External Device**

# Connecting to a Handsfree Compatible Device



# Select the handsfree compatible device→ [yr] (Menu)

- If a handsfree device is not registered, press (Search) and select a handsfree device to register it to the paired device list (page 11-6).
- **2** Select *Connect*→

### Tip

- Depending on the settings of the handsfree compatible device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window may appear after performing Step 2.
- If a call is received while a handsfree compatible device is connected, the handsfree device uses a ringtone that the handsfree device has, and the handset uses a ringtone according to the settings.

### Disconnecting from a Handsfree Device

Main menu Settings Connectivity Bluetooth

Paired Device

- **1** Select the handsfree compatible device→ [y] (Menu)
- **2** Select *Disconnect*→

# **Using Bluetooth® for Dial-up Connections**

Access Internet via handset using Bluetooth® connection. For details on settings and operations of a Bluetooth® modem compatible device, see the manual of the device.

- 1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth $^{\circ}$  compatible device $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - →Enter an authentication PIN code $\rightarrow$
  - Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on both the sending and receiving devices.

#### Note

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high connection charges.

# **Bluetooth® Settings**

# Displaying Details of a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device



**1** Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→

### Note

 If the connection is initiated by a device, on which the authentication PIN code is entered, and the handset registers the device to the paired device list, a part of the device information is not displayed.

# Changing the Name of a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device



- **1** Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→ <u>v</u> (Menu) → Device Name → ■
- **2** Enter a device name→

# **Deleting a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device**

Main menu Settings Connectivity Bluetooth

Paired Device

- **1** Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→ **1** (Menu)
- **2** Select  $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

# **Showing My Handset to Other Devices**

# Response to Detection by Other Bluetooth® Compatible Devices

Set whether to allow other Bluetooth® devices to find the handset during device search.



- **1** Select *Visibility*→
- **2** Select *Show*|*Hide*→
  - You may still receive a connection request even if Visibility is set to Hide.

# **Displaying Details of Your Handset**



# Displaying the Device Information of Your Handset

Select **Details**→

# **Changing Device Name of Your Handset**

Select **Device Name**  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  Enter a device name  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Setting Handsfree**

Set the mode for making and receiving calls while a *handsfree* compatible device is connected.



- **1** Select Set Handsfree→
  ■
- **2** Select *Handsfree*→
  - To make and receive regular calls from your handset, select *Private*.

# **Using USB**

Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC to transfer music files. You can also check the Data Folder of the handset on your PC.

## **Getting Started**

- Install the USB driver and Phone Monitor software before connecting the USB cable. For details on the installation procedure, refer to the Phone Monitor's Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 911T (CD-ROM).
- For details on the PC operating environments supported, refer to the Phone Monitor's Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 911T (CD-ROM).
- For details on connecting the USB cable to a PC, refer to the Phone Monitor's Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 911T (CD-ROM).
- When using a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into the USB port of the PC.
- You cannot use USB functions/settings other than the charge function during infrared communication.

# Transferring Music from a PC to a Memory Card

To transfer music files from a PC to your handset, you need to use data transfer mode to establish a connection between the PC and your handset.

- Offline mode is set while your handset is in data transfer mode. When the handset is in offline mode, it cannot make/receive calls, send/receive messages, nor connect to Yahoo! Keitai. In this mode, all the keys are locked.
- Music files cannot be played on the handset unless they are transferred using music transfer software.
- For details on operating music files, refer to the BeatJam 2007 for 911T Guide Book.

### Switching to Data Transfer Mode from the Main Menu

Switch to data transfer mode manually from the Main menu if the handset does not automatically switch to data transfer mode when connected by USB, or when you want to establish a connection again after canceling the data transfer mode

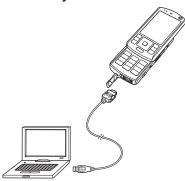
- 1 Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC
- 2 In Standby, press  $\longrightarrow$  Settings  $\longrightarrow$  Connectivity  $\longrightarrow$  USB  $\longrightarrow$  Data Transfer  $\longrightarrow$

aiT

- Offline mode is set while your handset is in data transfer mode. If the handset cannot switch to offline mode because it is communicating with another device, a confirmation window appears.
- A warning window appears if the memory card is not properly formatted. Format the memory card and perform the operation again.
- If the USB cable is unplugged while the transferring data window is shown, a confirmation window appears and the handset is disconnected from the device.

# Switching to Data Transfer Mode While Connected with USB

Open your handset in Standby, and use the USB cable to connect your handset to a  $PC \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 



Tip

- A confirmation window appears while an S! Appli set as the Screensaver is active.
- In the following cases, your handset does not switch to data transfer mode when you connect it to a PC via a USB cable.
  - The Password Lock is activated.
  - · Memory card is not inserted.
  - The display setting of the confirmation window (page 11-14) is set to **Do not Display**.

- 1 Switch your handset to data transfer mode
- **2** Follow the instructions on the PC

#### Note

 Do not remove the memory card while the transferring data window is displayed.

# **Canceling the Data Transfer Mode**

Use the connected PC's function to remove an external device

### Setting Display of the Data Transfer Mode Confirmation Window

Set whether to display the confirmation window for switching to data transfer mode.



**1** Select *Display/Do not Display*→

### Tip

 If Do not Display is set for the display setting of the confirmation window for switching to data transfer mode, the window does not appear even if a USB cable is connected to your handset in Standby. You can also switch to data transfer mode from the Main menu (page 11-13).

# Connecting to a PC

# Using a USB Cable for Dial-up Connections

Use a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC and then access the Internet, etc. For details on the configuration/operation of the PC modem, refer to the instruction manual for the PC.

### Note

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive
  at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of
  384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in
  high connection charges.

# Using a USB Cable for Charging

While your handset is on, you can charge the battery pack if you connect your handset and a PC using a USB cable. In order to charge the battery of the handset from a PC, turn the battery setting *ON*.



**1** Select  $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

### Note

- Charging is not possible while the PC or your handset is turned off.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.
- If the handset and PC are connected with a USB cable, either the PC battery or handset battery is consumed depending on the battery setting, regardless of whether they are communicating data.

ON : PC battery is usedOFF : Handset battery is used

### Tip

• Compared to using the AC charger or In-Car charger (optional), it may take longer to charge the battery through a USB cable.

# **Sound Settings**

# **Switching Manner Modes**

Manner mode can be selected from the following types.

Manner mode	Description		
Silent (😭)	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker.		
Alarms (%)	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker other than the alarm tone.		
Drive (🌦)	All sounds are disabled and vibration is off. However, sounds are available through earphones. Incoming calls are connected to Answering Machine.		
Original 1 to 3	Customizes the manner mode setting. The following items can be set individually: Ringtone (Ringtone Vol., Vibration) Alarm (Alarm Volume, Vibration) Calendar (Alarm Volume, Vibration) S! Appli (S! Appli Vol.) Sound Vol. Biffects Battery Ans. Phone		

Main		ı.		1.	
menu	Settings		Sounds		Manner Mode

**1** Select Switch Mode  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select a mode  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

# **Settings for Each Type of Manner Mode**

Manner mode is set as follows by default:

mamer mode is set as remems by actuality						
Item		Silent	Alarms	Drive	Original 1 to 3	
Ringtone Vol.	Voice Call	- Silent	Silent	Silent	Silent	
	Video Call					
	Message					
	DeliveryCheck					
	Missed Call					
	Circle Talk					
	Hot Status					
	S! Appli					
	Alarm	Silent	Volume under Alarm Tone (page 14-6)		Silent	
	Calendar	Silent	Silent		Silent	
	Voice Call	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	OFF	Pattern 1	
Vibration	Video Call					
	Message					
	DeliveryCheck					
	Missed Call					
	Circle Talk					
	Hot Status					

Item		Silent Alarms		Drive	Original 1 to 3	
Vibration (Continued)			Vibration under Alarm Tone (page 14-6)	OFF	Pattern 1	
	Calendar	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	OFF	Pattern 1	
Feeling Settings		Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 12-4)	Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 12-4)	OFF	ON	
Sound Vol.		Silent	Silent	Silent	Silent	
Effects (Keypad Tone, Power On, Power Off, Opening Tone, Closing Tone)		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	
Battery*		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	
Answering Machine		Setting under Answering Machine (page 14-7)	Setting under Answering Machine (page 14-7)	ON	ON	

<sup>\*</sup> The voice is heard from the receiver only during calls.



# **Setting the S! Appli Volume**

Select  $S!Appli \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Adjust the volume \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Setting the Sound Volume**

Select **Sound Vol.**  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting the Effects/Battery Alarm/Answering Machine Select Effects/Battery/Machine  $\longrightarrow$  ON/OFF  $\longrightarrow$ 

**3** Press (OK)

# **Setting the Sounds**

Ringtones and ringtone volume can be set for each mode. Some items may not be displayed in some modes.

# **Setting the Ringtone**

Main menu ► Settings ► Sounds

**1** Select *Incoming* → ■ → Select an item → ■

**2** Select *Ringtone*→

# Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Ringtone

Select *Patterns*/*Melodies* → ■ → Select a ringtone → ■

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Ringtone

Select **Phone Memory/Memory Card**  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow$  (twice)

 If the playback start point is included in the selected file, perform the following:

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select the file → Select the playback start point → ■

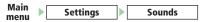
### Note

 If you use SMAF data which includes an image as a ringtone, the image may not be displayed correctly.

# Adjusting the Ringtone Volume

Adjust the ringtone volume in five levels or set to Silent. The ringtone volume can be set so that it gradually goes up (Ascending Volume) or down (Descending Volume).

●The ringtone volume in manner mode (page 12-1) cannot be adjusted.



**1** Select  $Incoming \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an item  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**2** Select *Ringtone Vol.*  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Adjust the volume \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Setting the Ringing Duration**

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Sounds

**1** Select *Incoming*→

2 Select Message|DeliveryCheck|Missed Call|Hot Status
→ □ → Duration → □

# **Specifying Time by Direct Entry**

Select  $Set\ Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter the ringing duration (1 to 99 seconds)  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Playing the Specified File until the End

Select *1 Cycle*→

Settings

The handset vibrates for incoming calls/messages.

Main menu ► Settings ► Sounds

**1** Select *Incoming* → **•** Select an item → **•** 

**Setting Vibration for Receiving Messages** 

Select  $Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Pattern \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  a vibration pattern  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ 

Setting Vibration for Receiving Feeling Messages

Select  $Message \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Feeling Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

2 Select *Vibration*→ 

Select a vibration pattern

→ 

Output

Description

Select a vibration pattern

# **Setting the Sound Volume**

Set the playback volume of melody files and other files or make it silent.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Sounds

**1** Select *Sound Vol.*→

2 Adjust the volume→ •

### **Setting the Earpiece Volume**

Adjust the incoming volume through the earpiece.

**1** Select *Earpiece Vol.*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Tip

 When the volume is adjusted during a call (pages 2-5, 5-2), the volume is reset after the call is terminated.

# **Setting the Speaker Volume**

Adjust the incoming volume through the speaker.

Main menu ► Settings ► Sounds

Select Speaker Vol.  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Adjust$  the volume  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Setting the Sound Effects/Sound Effects Volume

Set the sound and volume that is emitted when you turn on/off your handset or open/close it.

**1** Select Sound Effects  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Select *Tone Type*→

**Setting the Original Tone Preinstalled in Your Handset** Select *Original* → ■

Setting a Tone Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card* → Select a file→

(twice)

**3** Select *Tone Volume* → ■ → Adjust the volume → ■

#### Note

You cannot set files which include an image.

# **Display Settings**

# **Standby Display**

The wallpaper and clock on the Display can be set.

For details on Date&Time setting, see page 1-15.

# Setting Wallpaper

Main menu Settings Display Idle Screen

**1** Select Wallpaper  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Picture  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Wallpaper

Select **Preset**→ ■ → Select an image → ■

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Wallpaper

Select **Phone Memory/Memory Card**  $\longrightarrow$  Select a file  $\longrightarrow$  Use  $\stackrel{\bullet}{\clubsuit}$  to adjust the position of the image to clip  $\longrightarrow$   $\stackrel{\bullet}{\blacksquare}$  (Cut)

### Setting an Animation for Wallpaper

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Idle Screen

**1** Select Wallpaper  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Animation  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Image  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

# To Specify the Display Method

Select  $Design \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a pattern \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Set)

# To Specify the Display Sequence

Select Order 
ightharpoonup 
ighth

Select *Images List*→ ■→Select an image list→
■→

(Set)

 Data Folder images must be added to an image list in advance. Up to five frames can be added for each image list.

# To Display the Images in the Selected Folder as an Animation

Select  $Select Folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare (Set)$ 

To Specify the Image Preinstalled in the Handset

Select **Preset**→ ■ → 🖾 (Set)

Tip

- When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can adjust images, such as resizing and rotating them, by pressing (Resize) (page 7-22).
- When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can set an image with a size of W640 × H480 (W480 × H640) or less by pressing .

# **Setting the Clock Display**

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Idle Screen

### **Main Screens**

Designs on each screen of the Display can be changed.

# Setting the Icons/Images of the Main Screen

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Main Screens

Setting Icons/Images Preinstalled in Your Handset for Screen Decoration

Select *Normal/Ku-man* → (twice)

Setting Icons/Images Saved to Data Folder for Screen Decoration

Select *Phone Memory*  $\longrightarrow$  Select a file for screen decoration  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (twice)  $\longrightarrow$  YES  $\longrightarrow$ 

### Tip

- You can change designs of the Main menu by pressing v (Menu) in the Main menu and selecting Set Images (page 1-19).
- If the Tab View is applied for the Main menu (page 1-18), you can change designs of the Tab View by pressing (Menu) and selecting Gamendeco.

# **Setting the Image for Incoming Calls**

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Main Screens

**1** Select In-Calls  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Voice\ Call/Video\ Call \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Incoming Calls

Select *Normal/Ku-man*  $\rightarrow$  (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Incoming Calls

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card*  $\longrightarrow$  Select a file  $\longrightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$  to adjust the position of the image to clip  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Cut)  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- If you receive a call from a person whose picture is saved to Phone
  Book and the picture view setting (page 12-7) is ON, the picture is
  displayed regardless of the incoming image settings. However, if you
  receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3)
  set to ON when Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to Hide, the incoming
  image is displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 12-3), the incoming image is not displayed.

# **Setting the Image for Receiving Messages**

Main menu Settings Display Main Screens

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Receiving Messages

Select  $Normal/Ku-man \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Receiving Messages

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card*  $\longrightarrow$  Select a file  $\longrightarrow$  Use  $\stackrel{\frown}{\blacksquare}$  to adjust the position of the image to clip  $\stackrel{\frown}{\blacksquare}$  (Cut)  $\longrightarrow$   $\stackrel{\frown}{\blacksquare}$ 

# Setting the Download/Power On/Power Off Screen

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Main Screens

**Select** *Download*|*Power On*|*Power Off*→

**2** Select *Normal|Ku-man*→ (twice)

# **Setting the Display at Once**

Main menu 

Settings 

Display 

Main Screens

**1** Press  $\square$  (All)  $\rightarrow Normal/Ku-man \rightarrow \square$ 

# Caller ID

### Show/Hide Caller ID

Set handset to display or hide Caller ID (phone number) for incoming voice/ video calls. If caller is saved to Phone Book, the caller's name appears.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Display 
■ Caller Details

Select Caller Name  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ONIOFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

### **Setting the Picture View**

Set whether you want a picture to be displayed or not when you receive a voice or a video call from a person who is saved to Phone Book with a picture (page 4-2).

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Caller Details

**1** Select  $Picture \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- When Picture is set to ON, the incoming image is not displayed. If you
  receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3)
  set to ON when Secret Mode (page 13-5) is set to Hide, the picture is
  not displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 12-3), the picture is not displayed.

# Settings

### Switching between the 12-hour and 24-hour Clock

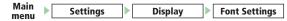


**1** Select 12 hour/24 hour→●

# **Font Settings**

The size and color of the text displayed on the Display can be changed.

### Setting the Font Size



**1** Select *Font Size* → Select a display you want to set → → Select a font size → ●

### **Setting the Font Color**



**1** Select Font Color  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  Select a color pattern  $\rightarrow \square$ 

### **Setting the Font Size Collectively**

**1** Select  $Font \ Size \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxtimes \ (All) \rightarrow Select \ a \ font \ size \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese Only)

3D animation character Ku-man is displayed in Standby. Ku-man communicates with you with the various outfits and gestures depending on the season, time of the day, and other conditions.

**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Note

- If the Language (page 12-10) setting is *English* or a language other than Japanese is selected in the Automatic settings, or Live Monitor is selected to display new information (page 14-3), Ku-man cannot be displayed in Standby.
- If Flash® is specified as Wallpaper (page 12-5), Ku-man and Flash® image cannot be displayed at the same time in Standby.

© Dora communications

# **Backlight Settings**

Adjust backlight brightness and illumination time.

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Backlight

**1** Select *Displays* → **•** 

**Setting Illumination Time** 

Select *Lighting Time* → ■ →Enter time (0 to 60 seconds) → ■ **Setting the Brightness** 

Select  $Brightness \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a level \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Media Player Backlight

**1** Select Media Player→ → Always ON/Always OFF/Same as Phone→ ■

Tip

 If you select Same as Phone, the setting follows Displays (above) of the backlight settings.

### **Setting the Display Power Saving**

Save battery power by setting the handset to turn off the display after a specified time of inactivity elapses.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Display 
■ Backlight

1 Select *Power Saving* → Select a display time → ■

# **Keypad Illumination Time**

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Backlight

**1** Select *Keypad Light* $\rightarrow$  **•**  $\rightarrow$  Enter time $\rightarrow$  **•** 

# **External Light Settings**

# **Setting the Notification External Light**

If you have unchecked information (missed calls, unread messages and Voice Mail), the external light flashes when your handset is closed. You can set the external light not to flash.

**Select** *Notification*→

Select a type of unchecked information  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a color/ $OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Setting the Incoming External Light**

Set the external light to flash when you have an incoming voice call, video call, message or set the external light not to flash.

Main 

Settings 

Display 

External Light

**1** Select *Incoming* → ■

**2** Select an item  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select a color/ $OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare \blacksquare$ 

Setting the External Light for Receiving Messages Select Message 
ightharpoonup 
ightharpoonup

Setting an External Light for Receiving Feeling Messages Select Message 
ightharpoonup 
ightha

#### Note

 If the external light (pages 4-3, 4-6) is set for each Phone Book entry, the settings on Phone Book are given priority.

# **Language Setting**

Change the language displayed on your handset.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings ▶ 言語選択

**1** Select language→ ■

 If you select Automatic, the handset selects the language set for the language setting in the USIM card automatically.

# **Key Setting**

# **Setting the Navigation Key Shortcuts**

Change the functions accessed when you press the navigation keys from Standby.

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Navigation Keys

# Changing Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys

Press  $\blacksquare \to \text{Select}$  the function you want to assign to  $\blacksquare \to \blacksquare \to \text{Select}$  the function you want to assign to  $\blacksquare \to \blacksquare \to \text{Select}$  the function you want to assign to  $\blacksquare \to \blacksquare \to \blacksquare$ 

•The remaining function is assigned automatically to •.

Resetting Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys

Press  $\underline{\mathbf{x}}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Reset \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ 

# **Setting the Side Key Function**

Change the function assigned to the side key  $^{ullet}$ . Press and hold  $^{ullet}$  in Standby to access the set function.

Select Manner ModelSimpleNotice (page 15-3)/
Torch|My Status (page 20-6)→
■

# **Sub Menu View Setting**

If more than two sub menu items are displayed when pressing 🔽 (Menu), set the window so that the item selected most recently is displayed on top.

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Sub Menu View

**1** Select *Show\Hide*→

#### Note

 This setting is disabled for Circle Talk, Circle Talk Call Log and Hot Status.

# **Answer Type Settings**

# Setting the Open to Talk

This feature allows you to answer an incoming call or Circle Talk call by simply opening your handset.



1 Select *ON/OFF*→

# Setting Any Key Answer

If Any Key Answer is set to ON, you can answer incoming voice/video calls and Circle Talk calls with any of O to O and O and O (for video call).



**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Rejecting Incoming Calls**

Set to reject calls with no Caller ID or calls from pay phones. Also reject calls from the specified phone numbers by adding numbers in the rejection list.

# **Rejecting Specific Incoming Calls**

If a call or a Circle Talk call is received from a phone number for which Reject Calls is set, the ringtone does not play and your handset does not vibrate, but Information Prompt (page 1-8) appears and the call can be confirmed in Received Call log (page 2-7).

•If the incoming call barring (page 16-7) is set, the call barring is given priority.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Reject Calls

Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Rejecting Calls from the Specified Phone Numbers Select  $Specific \#s \longrightarrow ON/OFF \longrightarrow ON/$ 

Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers Not in Phone Book

Select  $Unknown \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Select *Withheld*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *ON/OFF*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Rejecting Calls from Pay Phones Select  $Payphone \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Rejecting Calls for Which the Caller ID Cannot be Displayed

Select  $Unavailable \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

# Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List

Add phone numbers to the rejection list to reject calls from those phone numbers.

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select Specific  $\#s \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Reject List \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Press 
  ☐ (Add)

**Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book** 

Select  $Phone Book \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an entry  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  a phone number  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

**Entering a Phone Number Directly** 

Select  $Phone \ Number \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ phone \ number \rightarrow \blacksquare \ (twice)$ 

Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select  $Call \ Log \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select a phone number  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

### Tip

If a phone number is already added, select Reject List and press (Menu) to perform the following:

Edit/Delete

# **Caller ID Setting**

Set whether to notify the other party of your phone number when you make a call.

# **Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID**

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Call Settings 
■ Show My Number

**1** Select *Show My ID*/*Hide My ID*/*OFF*→

### Note

- If you select Show My ID, your phone number is always displayed on a phone of the other party regardless of whether you subscribe to Caller ID service or not. If you select Hide My ID, your phone number is not displayed on the phone of the other party regardless of whether you subscribe to the service or not. If you select OFF, the settings you chose when you subscribed to the service apply.
- For Circle Talk calls, the other party will know your phone number regardless of the settings.

## Tip

Instead of the automatic setting, press (Menu) and select Hide My
 ID or Show My ID while a phone number is displayed before making
 a call.

# **Priority Setting**

Setting how your handset behaves when it receives a call or message while it is operating.

Main Settings Priority

Select the function under operation→

Setting the Priority Operation While Media Player is Playing Select  $Media\ Player \rightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow Continue/Pause \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Setting the Priority Operation While S! Appli is Running Select S!  $Appli \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Select an item} \rightarrow Pause Apps/$ Continue  $Apps \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting the Priority Operation While Watching/Recording Digital TV

Select  $TV \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Watching | Recording \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an item  $\rightarrow Pause | Continue \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

- **2** Select an item→
- **3** Select *PauselContinue*→

# **Confirming the Memory Status**

Confirm the memory usage status of your handset and memory card.

Main Settings Memory

**1** Select *Memory Status* → Select an item →

- Press (Count) to check number of files saved (unavailable when checking memory card capacity).
- For details on formatting a memory card, see page 9-3.

# **External Device Settings**

Set the access point name (APN) of the network information to perform packet transmission from an external device such as a PC. Up to ten access point names (APN) can be set.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call Settings ▶ External Device

**1** Select  $Empty \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  the access point name (APN)  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Network Settings**

# **Retrieving Network Information**

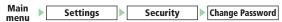
The screen for retrieving network information automatically disappears after you retrieve it once. To change the settings, retrieve network information from the Main menu.

Main menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ► Retrieve NW Info

**1** Select  $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Changing the Security Code**

Do not forget your security code (page 1-22) and do not reveal it to others.
 Write down your security code.

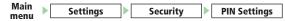


- **1** Enter your current security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Enter your new security code
- **3** Re-enter your new security code for confirmation

# **Setting PINs**

# **Setting PIN Request**

Set whether you are requested to enter your PIN (page 1-3) to perform verification each time a USIM card is inserted into the handset and the power is turned on. We recommend you to set to ON to prevent unauthorized use by a third party.

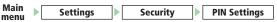


- 1 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Enter your PIN→

# **Changing PINs**

Change your PIN/PIN2 (page 1-3). Set PIN Settings (left) to  $\emph{ON}$  before you change the PIN.

 Do not forget your PINs and do not reveal them to others. Write down your PINs.



- Select Change PIN/Change PIN2→

  ■
- **2** Enter your current PIN/PIN2→
- 3 Enter your new PIN/PIN2→■
- **4** Re-enter your new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation → ■

# **Canceling PIN Lock**

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN and PIN2 are locked. To cancel PIN Lock/PIN2 Lock, enter a PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) Code. For details on PUK Codes, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

- 1 Open a function requiring PIN entry when the PIN/ PIN2 lock is set
- **2** Enter the PUK/PUK2→●
- **3** Enter your new PIN/PIN2→ ■
- 4 Re-enter your new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation

### Note

 If the personal unblocking key code (PUK) is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM lock is set. If the USIM lock is set, it cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

# **Password Lock**

Set Password Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Password Lock is activated, your security code (page 1-22) or biometric authentication (page 13-4) is required to use the handset. " " "indicator and *Password Lock* appear in Standby when Password Lock is set to ON.

# 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Activating Password Lock When You Close Your Handset Select *Phone Closed*  $\rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \square$ 

Activating Password Lock When Your Handset Goes into Power Saving Mode

Select  $Power\ Saving \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Activating Password Lock When the Handset is Powered On Select  $Power\ Off \longrightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \longrightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

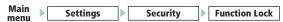
- Unless the Password Lock is OFF, the keys are locked when you perform selected operation.
- To use your handset while Password Lock is activated, enter your security code (page 1-22) to cancel Password Lock temporarily, and then set Password Lock to *OFF*. When the biometric authentication (page 13-4) is set to *ON*, press or open the handset and perform biometric authentication to temporarily unlock the handset.
- Phone Closed locks the handset when you close it in Standby. Power Saving locks the handset when the Display is turned off after a certain amount of time (as set in the power saving settings (page 12-9)) has passed in Standby.
- You cannot make a one-touch call from the audio remote control with microphone (optional) while the handset is locked with Password Lock.

#### Tip

- When the Password Lock is activated, you can still perform the following operations.
  - Turn the power on and off.
  - Enter the PIN if the **PIN Settings** (page 13-1) is set to **ON**.
  - Cancel the Password Lock temporarily.
  - Make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast quard).
  - Answer voice calls and video calls (but the Open to Talk and Any Key Answer functions are unavailable).
  - Answer Circle Talk calls (but the Any Key Answer function is unavailable).
  - · Stop the alarm (page 14-7).
  - Stop the schedule alarm (page 14-17).
  - Place calls on hold (page 2-3).
  - Divert calls (page 16-2).
  - Reject calls (page 2-5).
  - Adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received (pages 2-3, 5-2).
  - Pause the S! Appli set as the Screensaver (page 19-5).
- When the Password Lock is activated, Information Prompt (page 1-8) does not appear.
- " " indicator and Password Lock are not displayed in Standby, if the Password Lock is temporarily canceled after it is set to ON.

# **Function Lock**

Set Function Lock to prevent unauthorized access to Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks functions, Call Log and Sent/Received Log. When Function Lock is set, your security code (page 1-22) must be entered to access these functions/features



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select a function  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Lock|Unlock \rightarrow \blacksquare$

# **Biometrics**

Unlock Password Lock (page 13-2), using the Biometrics feature. Handset identifies user by verifying the user's face against a pre-saved image.

- Save up to three users (up to five pictures per user).
- Security Code is required to set Biometrics or save User image. For Security purposes, it is also recommended that you change your Security Code (page 13-1).
- S! FeliCa is available, even when Biometrics feature is enabled.

# Saving User Image

Main menu ► Settings ► Security ► Biometrics

- **1** Enter your security code (page 1-22)→Save Users

#### Note

- When framing the image, make sure that the eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, and other distinguishing features are clearly visible. Proper registration may not be possible if your hair is hanging over your eyes, or if you are wearing a hat. Proper registration also may not be possible if you shoot the image in an area that is too dark or bright.
- Make sure the entire face is visible within the window. The image may not be saved if the entire face is not framed within the window.
- For verification accuracy, save at least three images per user.
- Take each image under different lighting conditions.
- If you plan to wear glasses for authentication, take images with your glasses on. If you wear your glasses occasionally, save images with and without your glasses.

#### Tip

 Press (Menu) while the user name is selected to perform the following: *Rename/Reset*

# **Setting Biometrics**



- Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

#### **Biometric Authentication**

Once Biometrics is set to *ON*, use the feature to: Open handset when Password Lock (page 13-2) is set; activate Display from power saving mode; or turn handset power on.

• Feature unavailable unless User image (page 13-4) is saved.

# **1** While password lock is active, press ⊕ → Frame your face in Display

Authentication is performed and Password Lock is released.

#### **Entering Security Code to Cancel Password Lock**

While password lock is active, enter your security code (page 1-22)→

- When handset is closed, press any key on the front panel and then enter the security code.

#### Note

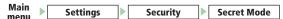
- Biometrics function is not 100% accurate in authenticating user identity.
   SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or damage suffered in using this feature.
- During biometric authentication, make sure that the eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, and other distinguishing features are clearly visible. Proper authentication may not be possible if your hair covers your eyes or if you are wearing a hat. Proper authentication also may not be possible if you shoot the image in an area that is dark or too bright.
- Make sure that the face being authenticated fits fully within the window. Authentication may not be possible if part of the face is outside of the window.

#### Tip

 When Biometrics is set to ON, authentication can be performed when you open handset.

# **Setting Secret Mode**

Set whether to show Phone Book entries saved as secret (page 4-3). "Image indicator appears when Secret Mode is set to **Show**.



1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

**2** Select *Show|Hide*→

#### Note

• Secret Mode is set to *Hide* if handset power is turned off.

#### Tip

- If you receive a call or message from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ON when Secret Mode is set to Hide, only the caller's phone number or sender's email address is displayed.
- If a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ON is saved to Hot Status Members List, the person's current status (Hot Status information) is not displayed when Secret Mode is set to Hide.

13

# **IP Service Setting**

Set whether to use Hot Status and Circle Talk.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Security ▶ IP Service

**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Note

 Before setting the IP service, you need to retrieve the network connection information (page 1-15).

# **Keypad Lock**

Keypad Lock allows you to disable the keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket. "\" indicator appears when Keypad Lock is set.

# Setting Keypad Lock

1 In Standby, press and hold

# **Canceling Keypad Lock**

Press and hold 
while the Keypad Lock is set

#### Note

- Keypad Lock cannot be set when Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>/infrared communication is activated.
- When Keypad Lock is set, Information Prompt (page 1-8) does not appear.

# Hold

The hold function prevents unintentional operations while your handset is closed. "  $\triangle$ " indicator appears on the Display when Hold is set.

# **Setting Hold**

f 1 Press and hold  $ar{b}$  when your handset is closed

#### **Canceling Hold**

Press and hold while the hold is set, and your handset is closed

#### Note

• When the battery level is low, Hold is not set.

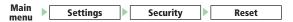
#### Tip

- Until you cancel Hold, it is enabled each time you close your handset.
- Hold is disabled while a voice/video call or Circle Talk call is being received.

# **Reset Settings**

Settings and data that will be reset are as follows:

Item	Description	
Reset All	Return all settings to their defaults and delete all data stored in the handset.	
Reset Setting	Reset all the settings to the default.	
Clear Memory	Delete all the Phone Book entries, data in Data Folder, and messages.	
Confirmation	If you select <b>Notify Only Once</b> , and you want to display a confirmation window again, reset the notification setting to the default so that a confirmation window appears again.	



- **1** Select an item→
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ *YES* $\rightarrow$

The selected data and settings are reset (initialized), and the hand set restarts automatically.  $\label{eq:continuous}$ 

#### Note

- Files or information saved in USIM Card and memory card are not restored after resetting handset.
- Reset All and Clear Memory cannot be performed when there is data created by a Lifestyle-Appli on the IC card. Delete the data created with the Lifestyle-Appli and then perform reset operations again.
- Performing Reset All may delete some preinstalled S! Appli and/or contents. Please note, deleted applications or content cannot be restored.

#### Tip

- The security code is initialized after reset all.
- A confirmation window will appear if the IC card is locked (page 23-4).
   Reset All and Clear Memory cannot be performed without temporarily releasing the IC card lock.

# **Restricted Mode**

# **Restricting Outgoing Calls and SMS Messages**

Restrict the making of calls and sending of SMS to only phone numbers in the Fixed Dialing Number list. You do not have to enter all the digits in the Fixed Dialing Number list. Make a call or send an SMS to a phone number starting from the entered number. The Fixed Dialing Number list is stored in the USIM card.

 Fixed Dialing Number is available when you use a compatible USIM card.



**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{Enter your PIN2} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

2 Select *ON/OFF*→

#### Adding Phone Numbers to the Fixed Dialing Number List

■ Set Restricted Mode to *ON* beforehand (page 13-8).



- **1** Select *Number List*→
- **2** Select  $Empty \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter your PIN2 \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Select  $Name \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a name \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **4** Select *Phone Number* → → Enter a phone number →
  - ●If you want to set 0-9 for a certain digit, press 👽 (Menu) and select Wild Card. "?" is displayed.

(Example: "090????1234" means the phone numbers through "090**0000**1234" to "090**9999**1234". You can make calls to all these numbers within.)

# **5** Press **□** (OK)

#### Note

 To send an SMS, you need to add the SMS center number ("+819066519300") and the destination number to the Fixed Dialing Number list.

#### Tip

 The amount of phone numbers and the number of characters in a name which can be entered in the Fixed Dialing Number list depend on the USIM card.

# **Restricting Packet Transmission**

Make packet transmission unavailable.

 Packet restriction is available when you use a compatible USIM card.



- **1** Select  $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Enter your PIN2} \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select YES→

  ■

# **Restricting Internet Connection**

Set the handset so it cannot be connected to the Internet by inputting a URL (page 18-4).

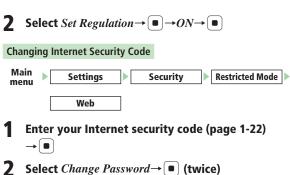


Enter your Internet security code (page 1-22)
→ •

# When Your Internet Security Code is not Registered

Press  $\blacksquare \to \text{Enter}$  your new Internet security code  $\to \blacksquare \to \text{Re-enter}$  your new Internet security code for confirmation  $\to \blacksquare \to Do$  not Save  $\to \blacksquare \to \blacksquare$ 

To register a clue to your Internet security code, select Save and enter a clue.



- 3 Enter your new Internet security code→
- **4** Re-enter your new Internet security code for confirmation→

  ■
- 5 Select SavelDo not Save→

  Registering a Clue to Your Internet Security Code
  Select Save→

  → Enter a clue→

  ■

# **Active Window**

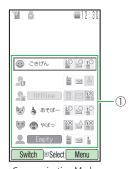
# **About Active Window**

Save people to the Members List, and make calls, send messages and initiate Circle Talk calls to them from Active Window. Check the latest information of Live Monitor and weather forecast in Active Window.

Active Window can be easily switched between Shortcut mode and Communication mode.



Shortcut Mode



Communication Mode

#### (1) Members List

Your current status (My Status) (page 20-6) is displayed on the top. Set an icon or a photo for each member. Save members from Hot Status Members List to view their status. Make calls, send messages or initiate Circle Talk in Communication mode (page 14-3).

# **②Live Monitor (Shortcut mode only)**

Displays newly received information and images.

**③Weather Indicator (Shortcut mode only)** 

# **Opening Active Window**

# 1 In Standby, press 🕒 (twice)

 Press (Switch) to toggle between Shortcut and Communication modes.

#### Tip

- Active Window opens in the previously displayed mode.
- Press (Menu) while Active Window is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the mode and the position of the cursor):

Settings/View/Change Member/Change Icon/Edit List/Main Menu/Mail/Yahoo! Keitai

#### **Members List**

Add members to Members List from Hot Status Members List or Phone Book to view their status in Active Window. A maximum of five people can be saved to the Members List.

It is possible to change and delete members, change the icons, and display your own Hot Status information (My Status) (page 20-6).

# **Saving People to the Members List**

Select the member you want to change  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Change Member*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

2 Select *Hot StatuslPhone Book*→ → Select a member → ■

#### Tip

 To add a member from the Hot Status Members List, you need to save the person to the Hot Status Members List first (page 20-3).

# **Editing the Members List**

1 In Active Window, press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit List \rightarrow [v]$ 

**2** Select a member  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**To Save a New Member** Select *Not Registered* → ■

#### Tip

 Press (Menu) while a member is selected in the Edit List window to perform the following:
 Delete/Delete All

# **Changing Icons**

- In Active Window, select a member→ (Menu)→

  Change Icon→

  ■

# **Setting My Status Display**

Set whether or not to display your Hot Status information (My Status) (page 20-6).

**2** Select *My Status* → **(ON/OFF)** 

### **Displaying Hot Status Information**

Display members' or your own Hot Status information.

1 In Standby, press 💍 (twice)

**In Shortcut Mode** 

Use •□• to select a member→ •

**In Communication Mode** 

Use  $\bigcirc$  to select a member  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $\lor iew \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Tip

- If My Status is selected in Communication mode, press to display the My Status window (page 20-6).
- Hot Status information is not displayed if the person is not saved to Hot Status Members List or is offline.

#### **Contacting Members**

In Communication mode, contact members by directly calling, sending a message or making a Circle Talk call.

- 1 In Active Window, use 🐧 to select a member
- **2** Use **●** to select the contact method → 
  - To make a call
  - To create and send a message
  - To make a Circle Talk call

#### **Live Monitor**

Check the details of newly received information displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.

When new information is received, " " is displayed in Standby.

- The content registered in Live Monitor under Yahoo! Keitai (page 18-16) is displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.
- **1** In Active Window, use ( to select the Live Monitor→
  - Press (Update) to update to the latest information. Press (Access) to display the selected site.

#### Note

If the reception of new information fails, Information Prompt (page 1-8) appears. While the Live Monitor list (page 18-16) is displayed, press
 (Menu) and then select *Update* to receive the information again.

#### Tip

- You can set the information to be automatically updated to the latest (page 14-4).

### Weather Information

Check weather forecast in Shortcut mode.

1 In Active Window, use 🐧 to select the Weather Indicator→ •

# **Setting Active Window**

Set Active Window display in Shortcut mode.

### **Setting Active Window Template**

Set whether to display both Hot Status information and news, or just Hot Status information or news in Active Window.

**1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ ■ → Templates → ■

**2** Select Status|News|Hot Status|News→
■

# **Setting Automatic Update**

Set to automatically update the information displayed in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

The time interval for the automatic updates can be set from *Flash News* (1/2/4/8 hours), *News* (24 hours), and *S! Loop* (4 hours).

**1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ ■ →Display→ ■

2 Select Auto Refresh→ → Flash News/News/ S! Loop→ ●

To Set Flash News to Update Automatically

Select the time interval for the automatic update  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

• If you select *Manual*, Flash News is not updated automatically.

# To Set News/S! Loop to Update Automatically

Select  $Automatic \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

• If you select *Manual*, News/S! Loop are not updated automatically.

#### Note

- Live Monitor flash news and S! Loop list updates do not take place during late hours at night.
- Automatic update may not occur if your handset is outside the service area or signal reception is poor.
- If automatic updates stop for some reason, performing a manual update (page 14-3) can restart the automatic updates.

### Tip

You can also set the automatic update by the following operation.
 Main menu → Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Auto Refresh

# **Setting the Image Display**

Set whether or not the Live Monitor in Active Window displays images of newly received information.



**1** Select  $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show \text{ or } Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## Setting the New Information Displayed in Active Window

Set whether to display all the newly arrived information or just the unread information in Active Window.

- **1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ → Display→ ■
- **2** Select *Unread/Read*→
- **3** Select *Unread Only* or *Show All*→

Tip

 If you select *Unread Only*, the ticker is not displayed until the next new information arrives when there is no unread information.

# **Setting the Ticker Speed**

Set the scroll speed and the shifting rate of the newly arrived information displayed in tickers in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

- 1 In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ ■

  →Display→ ■
- **2** Select *Screen Speed*→ → Select a speed → ■

# **Alarms**

An alarm name, alarm time, ring setting, repeat setting, snooze setting can be set to alarm setting. The "" indicator appears in Standby when Alarm is set. At the set time, the alarm tone, vibration and image display are activated. The External Light also flashes.

# **Setting Alarms**

Main Tools Alarms

**1** Select an alarm→

#### **Setting an Alarm Name**

Select an alarm name→ • Enter an alarm name→

# Setting an Alarm Time

Select *Time* → ■ → Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system → ■

**2** Press  $\square$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ OK $\rightarrow$  $\square$ 

Alarm is set.

- If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.
- Press 🖾 (ON/OFF) to turn off the alarm you have set.

#### Note

• Alarms do not sound when the handset power is OFF.

#### Tip

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you
  are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is
  reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or
  during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a
  picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- When you change the Main City (page 14-27) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date& Time* setting (page 1-15) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

# Setting the Alarm Tone/Alarm Volume/Vibration/Ringing Duration/Image

Main Tools Alarms

**1** Select an alarm→

**2** Select *Alarm Tone*→

# Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as an Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an alarm tone  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as an Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  a file  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

# Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Time \ Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**Setting the Alarm Volume** 

Select *Volume* → ■ → Adjust the alarm volume → ■

#### **Setting the Alarm Vibration**

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern →

 If you select *Link to Sound* for the vibration pattern, the handset vibrates with the melody (only melody files that vibrate the handset with the SMAF format) which is set as an alarm.

#### **Setting an Alarm Duration**

Select  $Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  an alarm duration  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time Select Image → □ → Original → □

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

**3** Press  $\square$  (OK) $\rightarrow$  $\square$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ OK $\rightarrow$  $\square$ 

#### Tip

- When manner mode is set to *Drive* (page 12-1), the alarm does not sound and the vibrator does not vibrate.
- The handset does not vibrate when the alarm vibration setting for the Original Mode (page 12-2) is set to OFF.

### Setting the Repeat/Snooze

Main 
■ Tools 
■ Alarms

**1** Select an alarm→

# Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

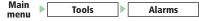
Select  $Once \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an item $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

## **Setting the Snooze**

Select  $Snooze \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Enter an interval between alarm tones  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

 If the snooze is set to ON, the alarm plays in specified intervals up to five additional times.

# **Deleting Alarms**



### **Deleting One Alarm**

Select an alarm  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Reset \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Deleting All Alarms**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Reset  $All \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **Alarm Time**

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

# Press any button while the alarm is going

### **Returning to Standby**

Stop alarm→

**Stopping Snooze and Returning to Standby** 

Stop alarm  $\rightarrow Stop Snooze \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Answering Machine**

This feature can record a caller's message when you are unable to answer a voice call. The """ indicator appears in Standby when the Answering Machine is set to *ON*. Your handset can store up to five messages and each message can be up to 30 seconds long.

# Setting the Answering Machine



**1** Select *Setting*→

# 2 Select *ON/OFF*→

You can also set the Answering Machine if you press and hold
 PUPICKED in Standby.

#### Note

- Messages may not be recorded when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver (page 19-5).
- Answering Machine is not available for video calls and Call Waiting (page 16-5).
- When manner mode (Drive/Original Mode) is set, Answering Machine settings in Drive/Original Mode (page 12-3) are given priority. If you set or cancel Answering Machine while manner mode (Drive/Original Mode) is set, change the Answering Machine settings in Original Mode.
- If your handset receives a call when the Ans Machine is OFF, and you recorded a message by pressing and holding Ans Machine turns to ON after the call automatically.

 When the Auto Answer (page 14-38) is ON, the Answering Machine is given priority.

 If you press while the handset is playing an answering message or a caller is recording a message, you can talk with the caller.

• If you press [xr] ( \dagger) while a message is being recorded, you can listen to the message through the speaker.

14 Setting the Ringing Duration

Specify the length of the time that the handset receives a call to the time the answer message activates.

Main menu Tools Ans Machine

**1** Select *Set Duration*→

**2** Enter the ringing duration→ •

# **Playing/Deleting Messages**

Main menu ► Tools ► Ans Machine

# **Playing a Message**

Select *Recordings* → Select a message →

Unheard recorded messages have " " displayed. Messages you have heard have " " displayed.

# **Deleting a Message**

Select  $Recordings \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a message \rightarrow \checkmark (Menu) \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Notepad**

Main menu Tools Notepad

Select the notepad to which the content is not stored → ■ → Enter the contents of the memo → ■

#### Tip

- To edit the stored content, press 🖾 (Edit) after selecting the notepad.
- If the contents are already stored, select the notepad and press
   (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete/Set Category/Export/As Mail

# Setting the Category Icon According to the Contents of the Notepad

- Select a notepad  $\rightarrow \boxed{}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Set\ Category \rightarrow \boxed{}$
- **2** Select a category→

The icon of the selected category is displayed.

# **Calculator**

Main 

Tools 

Calculator

Key	Function	Key	Function
□ to ~ 9 5 wxxz	Enter Numbers	•	=
Ō	+	<b>/</b>	Switch +/–
P	_		Tax
•••	×	クリア/メモ)	C (Clear)
	÷	120 U 28	Decimal
PWR	Exit		

Tip

- From the Calculator window, press w (Menu) to perform the following:

  \*Converter\*: Enter the currency exchange rate and then perform

currency conversion calculations.

Clear All : Delete the input value and data stored in memory.

**MS** : Save the input value to memory.

M+ : Add the input value to the value stored in memory.

MR : Display the value stored in memory.

% : Calculate a percentage.

1/X : Calculate a reciprocal.

SQRT : Calculate a square root.

Set Tax Rate : Set the tax rate when you press ■. Enter the tax

rate and press .

#### Converter

Main menu Tools Calculator

- **1** Press ☑ (Menu)→Converter→ →Exchange Rate → →Main Currency/Sub Currency → ■
- 2 Enter the exchange rate → → ②→?/XE (three times)
- **3** Enter an amount→¬¬ (Menu)→Converter→¬¬

  To Main|To Sub→¬¬

# **Dictionary**

The dictionary data (辞文パ(Jispa)) on the handset include a Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), English-Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), and a Japanese-English dictionary (approximately 36,000 entries).

"Jispa" of Gakken Co., Ltd. is bundled as Japanese dictionary, English-Japanese dictionary and Japanese-English dictionary.

Main
Tools
Dictionary

Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in Japanese

Select  $Japanese \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \stackrel{\text{\tiny pro}}{\longrightarrow} \rightarrow \text{Enter a keyword} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Select a word} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Entering an English word to look up its meaning in Japanese Select *English-Japanese* → ■ → → Enter a keyword → ■ → Select a word → ■

Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in English

Select Japanese-English  $\longrightarrow \square \longrightarrow \square$ Enter a keyword  $\longrightarrow \square \longrightarrow$ Select a word  $\longrightarrow \square$ 

#### Tip

- You can switch dictionaries by pressing (Switch) while a word is selected. You can see the meaning of a word by selecting the word and pressing.
- While a word is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   Word Search/Clear Word/To Word List/Copy Header
- After selecting a word and pressing , press (Menu) to perform the following:

Copy Meanings/Copy Header

# **Calendar**

Up to 400 events (up to 100 events a day) can be saved to Calendar. If Calendar is set to appear in Standby (Idle Screen, page 12-6), indicators appear on the days of a scheduled event.

# **Opening Calendar**

Set to open Calendar in Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View or All View.



- **1** Press **□** → Select a calendar view format
  - You can switch the calendar view between Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View and All View.

# Using Information Registered in the Event

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the Event. You can refer to messages, websites, and images.



# **2** Select an item→

### Making a Call to the Stored Phone Number

Press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $Voice Call \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Voice Call / Video Call <math>\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# Sending a Message to the Stored Phone Number

Press  $\blacksquare \rightarrow Create \ Mail \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create \ a \ message$ 

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 17-9) about the following operations.

# Sending a Message to the Stored Email Address

Press ● → Create a message

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) about the following operations.

# Connecting to the Stored URL

Press  $\longrightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Referring to the Message Which has been Linked Select To Messages→ ■

Referring to the Web Page Which has been Linked Select *To Saved Pages*→ ■

Referring to the Picture Which has been Linked Select *To Pictures* 

#### Using Registered Phone Numbers and Email Addresses in Contents

Main Tools Calendar

**1** Select a day→ →Select an event→

**2** Select an item in *Contents* → •

# Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

### Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number

Press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Create Mail*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Create*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Create a message

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 17-9) about the following operations.

### Sending a Message to the Selected Email Address

Press  $\blacksquare \rightarrow Create \ Mail \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create \ a \ message$ 

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) about the following operations.

# Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Press  $\blacksquare \to Save \ Sender \to \blacksquare \to Add \ New/Add \to \blacksquare \to Add \ a$  Phone Book entry

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.

#### What can you do on Monthly View/Monthly&Event View/4-Month View Window?



In the Monthly View window, the cursor is in orange, and " = " shows that an event is registered. In this window, an icon is displayed on a day that an event is registered.

Go to the previous month by pressing  $\boxed{\textbf{K}}$  . In the 4-Month View window, the previous 4 months are shown.

Go to the next month by pressing ##@. In the 4-Month View window, the next 4 months are shown.

Monthly View Window

Press [97] (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete : Delete events by selecting For this Day, Before Today or

All.

Set Holiday : Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the

week.

To Tasks :Open Tasks Window.

Jump :Jump to the specific day.

Settings : Use Reminder (page 14-18), set the Calendar Lock (page

14-17), set the display format of the calendar (page 14-10),

and set text colors (page 14-18).

## What can you do on Weekly View Window?

In the Weekly View window, the cursor is in orange. A starting time and an event title are displayed on the date that an event is registered.

Go to the previous week by pressing \*\*:. Go to the next week by pressing \*\*:. Press \*\* (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete : Delete events by selecting For this Day, Before Today or

All.

**Set Holiday** : Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the week.

To Tasks :Open Tasks Window.

Jump :Jump to the specific day.

Settings : Use Reminder (page 14-18), set the Calendar Lock (page

14-17), set the display format of the calendar (page 14-10),

and set text colors (page 14-18).

#### What can you do on Daily View Window?

Go to yesterday by pressing \*\*\*
Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*\*

Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\*

Go tomorrow

If *Not Completed* is displayed, unfinished tasks can be displayed by

pressing ( • ).

Press (Menu) to perform the following: *Edit*: Edit the selected event.

Delete :Delete events by selecting One or For this Day.

*Export* : Export the selected event to *Phone Memory/Memory Card*.

Send :Send the selected event as an As Mail/Via Infrared/Via

Bluetooth.

**Jump** :Jump to the specific day.

## What can you do on All View Window?

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Edit**: Edit the selected event.

Delete : Delete events by selecting One, Select Multi or All.

**Search** : Search for events by specifying a stamp icon.

Export :Export the selected event to Phone Memory/Memory Card.

Send :Send the selected event as an As Mail/Via Infrared/Via

Bluetooth

Settings : Use Reminder (page 14-18), set the Calendar Lock (page

14-17), set the display format of the calendar (page 14-10),

and set text colors (page 14-18).

# **Adding a New Event**

Main Tools Calendar

1 Press 

☐ (Create)

**Entering a Title of the Event** 

Select  $Title \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{Entering a title} \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ 

Setting the Start Date and Time for the Event

Select  $Start\ Date \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Date \& Time/Date\ Only \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  date and time  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- Enter only the date, when you selected *Date Only*.

Setting the End Date and Time for the Event

Select  $End \ Date \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter date and time  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- **2** Press 🖾 (OK)

Tip

- You can store events from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The events on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- You cannot store your events without entering *Title* or *Contents*.
- Press (Menu) while registering an event to perform the following operations (some items are not displayed depending on the selected item):

Reset/To Call

### **Setting the Alarm**

You can set the alarm to notify you about an event. At the set time, the alarm tone or time reading, vibration and image display are activated, and the alarm date and time and the event title are displayed on the Display.

Main Tools Calendar

- **1** Press  $\square$  (Create) $\rightarrow Alarm \rightarrow \square$
- **2** Select  $ON \rightarrow \bullet$

**Setting an Alarm Date and Time** 

Select *Time* → Enter an alarm date and time →

• Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select *Duration* → Enter a ringing duration →

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an alarm tone  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  a file  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Time \ Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**Setting the Alarm Volume** 

Select *Volume* → ■ → Adjust the alarm volume → ■

**Setting the Alarm Vibration** 

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern → ■

# Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select  $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Original \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

# Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

# **3** Press $\square$ (OK) $\rightarrow \square$ (OK) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \square$

 If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

#### Tip

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you
  are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is
  reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or
  during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a
  picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- Alarm does not sound when: Manner mode (page 12-1) is set to Silent; or Calendar alarm volume for Original Mode (page 12-2) is set to Silent.
- When manner mode (page 12-1) is set to *Drive*, the alarm does not sound and handset does not vibrate.
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 12-2) are OFF for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 14-27) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date&Time* setting (page 1-15) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

#### Other Settings

Main menu ► Tools ► Calendar

# 1 Press ☐ (Create)

# Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

Select  $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Repeat for \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Do \ not \ Repeat | Daily |$   $Weekly | Monthly | Yearly | End \ of \ Month \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ repeat duration \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Setting the Stamp Icon**

Select **Stamp Icon** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the stamp icon $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Entering Contents**

Select *Contents*→ ■ → Enter contents → ■

### Setting a Location

Select  $Location \rightarrow ( \blacksquare ) \rightarrow Enter location information \rightarrow ( \blacksquare )$ 

#### Setting a Category of the Event

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Category \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a category  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow$ 

#### Setting a Phone Number/Email Address/URL

Select  $Phone\ Number/Address/URL 
ightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a phone number/email address/URL  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

 You can make a voice call or video call, create a message, and connect to a website on the details window of events (page 14-10).

# Setting Link to a Message/Website/Image

Select  $Messages/Saved\ Pages/Pictures \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ a\ message/$  web page/image  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

 You can look up messages/websites/images that you set in the details window of event (page 14-10).

### **Displaying/Hiding Events**

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- If you set the start date to the last day of the month, you can set the Repeat for setting to *End of Month*.
- If an event set to repeat daily, weekly, etc. is deleted, a message asks if
  you wish to cancel repeat features. Select *Do not Repeat* to delete the
  event for that day only.
- Canceling a single date of a repeated event may not be effective if the event is sent (page 10-11) and received by another device.

### Tip

- To repeat infinitely, enter "00".
- If you set *Monthly* for the 30th or 31st, the repetition is only set for months that include that date.
- If you set *Hide* for event display/hide, your security code needs to be entered to view or edit events. Only " " is displayed on the calendar window, and no icon is displayed on the calendar in Standby.

# **Editing the Events**

The stored events can be edited.

Main Tools Calendar

- **1** Select a date→
- **2** Select an event $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 3 Select an item→ 
   → Edit the item → 
  ■
- **4** Press  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ Overwrite|Save as New $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

# **Deleting Events**

Main Tools Calendar

#### **Deleting One Event**

Select a date  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an event  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $One \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **Deleting All of Today's Events**

Select a date  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\longrightarrow$   $For this Day <math>\rightarrow$   $YES \longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

### **Deleting All Previous Events**

## **Deleting All Events**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Delete* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$  *YES* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## **Deleting Multiple Events**

Press  $\stackrel{\text{\tiny colo}}{\longrightarrow}$  Switch to the All View  $\rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\text{\tiny tolo}}{\longrightarrow}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $\text{$Delete} \rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\text{\tiny tolo}}{\longrightarrow}$   $\rightarrow$  Select  $\text{$Multi$} \rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\text{\tiny tolo}}{\longrightarrow}$   $\rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\text{\tiny colo}}{\longrightarrow}$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$   $\text{$YES$} \rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\text{\tiny tolo}}{\longrightarrow}$ 

#### Alarm Date & Time

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

1 Press any button while the alarm is sounding

**Returning to Standby** 

Stop alarm→

**Checking the Event Details** 

Stop alarm→ (View)

# Jumping to the Specified Date

Enter a date and then display the events for that date. This function cannot be used from the All View window.

Main menu Tools Calendar

**1** Press [m] (Menu) $\rightarrow Jump \rightarrow [m]$ 

**2** Enter a date→

# Setting the Calendar Lock

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code (page 1-22) in order to browse the Calendar.

Main menu ► Tools ► Calendar

- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→

#### Note

 If you set Calendar Lock to Lock, an event title is not displayed when the alarm sounds (page 14-14). The Details window cannot be viewed either

# Changing the Colors of Dates and Days of the Week

Change colors of specified dates and days of the week on the Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, and 4-Month View, and on the calendar displayed in Standby if you set Calendar in Idle Screen setting (page 12-6).

Main Tools Calendar

Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Date
Select a date→

(Menu)→Set Holiday→

Current Day→

Select a color/Deactivate→

Select a color/Deactivate→

Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Day of the Week

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Set Holiday**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **Select Week**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the day of the week  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a color  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)

#### qiT

 If you set colors both in Current Day and Select Week, colors set in Current Day are given priority.

# **Using Reminder**

Reminder sets off the alarm at a specified time, and displays events and tasks (page 14-19) of today or the following day.

Main 

Tools 

Calendar

1 Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Reminder $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**Setting Display** 

Select  $Today \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Today/Tomorrow \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**Setting Remainder Alarm Time** 

Select *Time* → ■ →Enter a time → ■

• Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Set\ Alarm \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ an\ alarm\ tone \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Set\ Alarm 
ightharpoonup 
ightharpoonup$ 

**Setting the Alarm Volume** 

Select  $Set\ Alarm 
ightarrow \bigcirc 
ightarrow Volume 
ightarrow \bigcirc 
ightarrow Adjust$  the alarm volume  $ightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**Setting the Alarm Vibration** 

Select  $\overline{Set\ Alarm} \rightarrow \overline{\blacksquare} \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \overline{\blacksquare} \rightarrow Select\ a\ vibration$ 

**Setting an Alarm Duration** 

Select  $\underbrace{Set\ Alarm} \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Enter a ringing duration  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**Setting Alarm Repeats** 

Select  $Once \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Press (OK)

# **Setting First View**

Select from Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, or 4-Month View for the event view window at the time of launch of the calendar.

Main menu Tools Calendar

**1** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  First View $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select a calendar view format→

# Setting the Text Color

Set text colors and border colors on the Daily View/All View window.

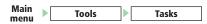
Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Font Color $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select a color→

# **Tasks**

Up to 100 tasks can be stored on the task list. View the entire tasks in a list format, or separately by Not Completed and Completed. Also set priorities and categories.

# **Adding Task Items**



1 Press  $^{\Sigma r}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Create New \rightarrow ^{\blacksquare}$ 

**Entering a Title** 

Select *Title*→ ■ →Enter a title→ ■

**Setting a Due Date and Time** 

Select  $Deadline \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  a due date and time  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

• Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

**2** Press 
☐ (OK)

Tip

- You can store tasks from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The tasks on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- Entry of *Title* or *Contents* field is required to save a task.

### **Setting the Alarm**



**1** Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Create  $New \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Alarm \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select  $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

### **Setting an Alarm Time**

Select  $Time \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter an alarm time  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

• Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

#### **Setting an Alarm Duration**

Select  $Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a ringing duration  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an alarm tone  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  a file  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

**Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm** 

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Time \ Reading \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

**Setting the Alarm Volume** 

Select *Volume* → ■ → Adjust the alarm volume → ■

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern →

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select  $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc Original \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

14

# Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select  $Image \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select an image  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Use  $\blacksquare \blacksquare$  to adjust the position of the image to  $clip \rightarrow \blacksquare \square$  (Cut)  $\blacksquare \blacksquare$ 

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$   $OK \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

 If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

#### Tip

- For details about how the handset operates during the alarm, see page 14-14.
- Alarm does not sound when: Manner mode (page 12-1) is set to Silent; or Calendar alarm volume for Original Mode (page 12-2) is set to Silent.
- When manner mode (page 12-1) is set to *Drive*, the alarm does not sound and handset does not vibrate.
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 12-2) are OFF for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 14-27) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date&Time* setting (page 1-15) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

#### Other Settings

Main menu Tools Tasks

# **Setting the Stamp Icon**

Select *Stamp Icon* $\rightarrow$ [ $\blacksquare$ ] $\rightarrow$ Select the stamp icon $\rightarrow$ [ $\blacksquare$ ]

#### **Entering Contents**

Select *Contents*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter contents  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Displaying/Hiding Tasks**

Select  $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Setting Priority**

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Priority \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a priority \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

#### **Setting Status of Tasks**

Select *Options*  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  *Status*  $\rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow$  Select a status of task  $\rightarrow \square$ 

# Press (OK)

#### Tip

If you set *Hide* for task display/hide, your security code (page 1-22) needs to be entered to view or edit tasks. Only " " " is displayed on the Tasks window, and title and deadline are not displayed on the Tasks window.

# **Opening Tasks**

Main menu Tools

**1** Select  $Tasks \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Changing the View Format of the Task List

Press  $\overline{y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Change View  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select the view format  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

**Changing the Status of Tasks** 

Select a task $\rightarrow \boxtimes$  (Status) $\rightarrow Not$  Completed/Completed/Overdue  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

From the task list, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following:
 Create New/Edit/Delete/Change View/Sort by/Search/
 To Calendar/Export/Send/Settings

## **Using Information Registered in the Tasks**

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the tasks.

Main menu Tools Tasks

Select a task → ■ → Select contents including information → ■

**2** Select the information → •

**Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number** 

Select Voice Call  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Voice Call/Video Call  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email Address

Select  $Create \ Mail \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create \ a \ message$ 

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) about the following operations.

Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select  $Save\ Sender 
ightarrow igstarrow 
ightarrow Add\ New/Add 
ightarrow igstarrow Add\ a$  Phone Book entry

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.

**Connection to the Selected URL** 

Select *Connect*→

 If you have selected a URL including location information, select Web Access/Navi Appli/To Locations.

# **Deleting Tasks**

Main Tools Tasks

#### **Deleting One Task**

Select a task $\rightarrow$ 127 (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$ 1  $\rightarrow$ 0ne $\rightarrow$ 1  $\rightarrow$ 1YES $\rightarrow$ 1

#### **Deleting All Tasks**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **All**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

• You can delete all tasks from the All View window.

#### **Deleting Multiple Tasks**

Press  $\overline{\psi}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Delete $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select tasks  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Delete) $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

# Setting the Tasks Lock

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code (page 1-22) in order to browse the Tasks list.

1 Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow Tasks Lock \rightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow (Menu$ 

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)

**3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→

# **Time Table**

Time table from Monday to Saturday can be created. Subjects, classrooms, and font colors of up to eight classes can be registered.

# **Registering a Time Table**

Main Tools Useful Tools Time Table

Select a period→ $\boxed{v}$  (Menu)→Edit→ $\boxed{\bullet}$ 

Adding a Subject/Classroom/Teacher/Memo
Select an item→ ■ →Enter information→ ■

Setting the Background/Font Color
Select BG Color/Font Color→ Select a color→ □

Press (OK)

# **Checking the Time Table**

Main menu Tools Useful Tools Time Table

**1** Select a period→

Tip

 You can switch between the subject window and the subject/classroom window by pressing (Change) on the Time Table window.

# **Copying Time Tables**

Copy a registered time table and paste it in another time table.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Time Table

- **2** Select the destination period→
  - To copy another period, repeat Step 2.
- **3** Press **□** (OK)

#### Tip

 If you want to cancel the time table you have copied, press v (Menu) and select *Undo* after copying the time table.

# **Deleting Time Tables**

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Time Table

# **Deleting One Time Table**

### **Deleting All Time Tables**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Delete* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$  *YES* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Setting Time Table**

# Setting Starting/Ending Time of a Time Table

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Time Table

- **1** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set\ Time \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- **3** Press **□** (OK)

#### Tip

• To reset the changed start/end time to the default, press  $\boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Settings**  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$   $\rightarrow$  **Reset Time**  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$   $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$ 

# Kitchen Timer

Use Kitchen Timer as a countdown timer.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Kitchen Timer

Enter countdown time → ■

2 Press (Start)

3 Press (Stop)

Tip

- The level of the alarm volume is that set for the Sound Vol. setting (page 12-4). If manner mode is set to *Silent* or *Alarms* (page 12-1), no sound is emitted for the alarm.
- When the manner mode (page 12-1) is set to *Drive*, the alarm does not play and the handset does not vibrate.
- The alarm rings if you close the handset after starting the kitchen timer.

# **Voice Recorder**

The voice recorder allows you to record sound and save the recording data to Data Folder of the handset or memory card. Although the possible length of recording time depends on the amount of available memory space in Data Folder, the maximum recording time is 90 minutes for each recording.

• Please use the voice recorder exercising common morals and manners.

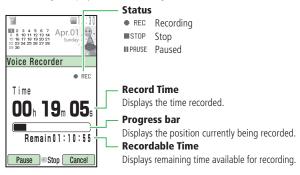
# **Recording Sound**

Sounds recorded with the voice recorder are automatically saved in the *Ring Song* • *Tone* folder. You record through a microphone (mouthpiece).

- Please note that recording some concerts and shows aren't allowed even for personal use.
- If the handset receives a call while you are recording, the recording stops and is automatically saved in order to give priority to the call. If you don't want to receive calls while you are recording, set the handset to the offline mode (page 2-11).

# **Recording Window**

The following is displayed on the recording window.



#### Recording

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Voice Recorder

- **1** Select *Record*→ **•** (twice)
  - Press (Pause) to pause recording. To resume recording, press (To save the recording data, press (Save).
  - To stop recording, press
    ■.
  - When the remaining time available for recording is less than 10 seconds, " ● REC " flashes.

#### Tip

 The keypad backlight will not illuminate if you perform a key operation during recording, if you record with the handset open, or if you open the handset from the closed position during recording.

# **Changing Destination Folders**

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Voice Recorder

- **1** Select  $Record \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Press **(Menu)**→SelectStorage→
- **3** Select *Phone Memory Memory Card*→

  ■

# **Playing Recordings**

Playback of what you recorded during a call (page 2-5) is possible.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Voice Recorder

- **2** Select a file→

# **Number Memo**

# **Viewing a Number Memo**

Main menu Tools Useful Tools Number Memo

**1** Select a number memo→ •

### Tip

- You can make a call by selecting a phone number registered in the Number Memo and pressing
- Select a phone number registered in the Number Memo and press 1 to display the Circle Talk confirmation window. Then, press and hold 1 to make a Circle Talk call.
- While selecting a number memo, press v (Menu) to perform the following:

Video Call (page 5-1)/Circle Talk (page 20-12)/To Phone Book (page 4-2)/Hide My ID (page 12-13)/Show My ID (page 12-13)/Add to List (page 12-12)/Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9)/Delete

# **World Clock**

Time displayed on the time display, event, and alarm is the time in a city you set in Set as Main City (page 14-27). If you set the time for City 1 and City 2, and select *World-Digital* or *World-Analog* in Idle Screen setting (page 12-6), then the time and date of City 1 and City 2 can be displayed in Standby.

# **World Clock Setting**

14 Setting City 1/City 2

Main 

Settings 

Phone Settings 

Clock

World Clock

1 Select City 1/City 2→ ■

**2** Use •• to select a city→•

### **Setting the GMT Offset**

Select a city by entering a GMT time difference.

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Clock ► World Clock

- **1** Select City 1/City  $2 \rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ GMT Offset  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Use 🖢 to select the time difference→ (twice)

### Setting Daylight Saving Time (DST)

When the daylight saving time setting is ON, "#" is displayed on the world clock. "\*" is displayed on the clock in Standby.

Main menu Settings Phone Settings Clock

World Clock

- 2 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

#### **Editing City Names**

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Clock

World Clock

- **1** Select City 1/City 2→ ■
- 2 Use to select a city→ (Menu)→ Rename City
  → •
- **3** Enter a city name→

#### Tip

- To reset all city names, select *City 1/City 2*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Reset Name*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *YES*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- You can enter up to 13 characters for a city name, regardless of whether they are single-byte or double-byte characters. On some windows, a part of a city name may be omitted.

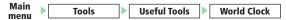
# Switching the Main City



- **1** Select Set as Main City→ ■
- **2** Select City 1/City 2→ ■

# **Displaying World Clock**

On the world clock window, you can view dates, time, and time difference by moving a cursor (yellow line) on the map. City 1 and City 2 of the World Clock settings (page 14-26) are displayed in green and red lines respectively.



- 1 Use ••• to select a city

# **Setting the Charging in Progress Display**

Select an animation to appear while the handset is charging.



- Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select  $Settings \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Image \rightarrow \blacksquare$

To Specify the Display Method

Select  $Templates \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a template \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

To Specify the Duration of the Display

Select  $Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Input the display time} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**3** Select *Images List* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an image list $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### To Create an Animation and Configure Its Settings

 Data Folder images must be added to an image list in advance. Up to five frames can be added for each image list.

Press 
(Edit)→Select an image list item→
Phone Memory/
Memory Card→
Select an image→
(twice)→
(Set)

To Display the Images in the Selected Folder as an Animation

Select **Select Folder**  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

To Specify the Image Preinstalled in the Handset Select  $Preset \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, events and other information to a memory card.

# **Transferring Files to a Memory Card**

Main menu Tools Backup

**1** Select Transfer  $All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Backup \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**2** Select data→

To select other data, repeat Step 2.

### Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press ☑ (Menu)→*Mark All/Unmark All*→ ■

# 3 Press ☑ (Trans.)→ □ → Enter your security code (page 1-22)

- When transferring Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book.
   Select NO to send the Phone Book entries without images.
- When transferring events/tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send previous events. Select *Futures Only* to send events without including previous events.

#### Note

- Some data cannot be transferred to the memory card.
- Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file in a memory card. The file may be damaged.
- Copyrighted data may not be transferred to the memory card or deleted from the handset after the transfer.
- The security settings on the handset are not reflected in the transferred data.

#### Tip

- Offline mode is set during backing up to the memory card. When the backing up of data is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- The name of transferred files are 2-digit year, month, and day and serial numbers.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.
- Since only a single content key backup file can be saved to a memory
  card, backing up another content key will overwrite the previously saved
  backup file. If you want to maintain the previously backed up content
  key, import the backup file from the memory card to the handset and
  then perform the backup operation again.

#### Tip

- The file whose content key has been moved to the memory card for backup will no longer be available on the handset.
- Importing a content key into the handset adds it to other content keys in the handset. It does not overwrite the current handset content keys.

#### Restoring

Main menu ► Tools ► Backup

- **1** Select Transfer  $All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Restore \ AlRestore \ B \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - The restoring method varies by models which performed data backup. If *There are no data*. is displayed when selecting either *Restore A* or *Restore B*, select the other item.
- **2** Select data→
  - To select other data, repeat Step 2.

# Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press 🖅 (Menu)→Mark All/Unmark All→ 🔳

Press 

(Read)→

Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Restoring Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/ Notepad

Select  $Add/Overwrite \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)  $\rightarrow$  Select data  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

 If you select Add, you can add data without deleting data stored on the handset.

#### Note

- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security settings on the data restored to the handset are not reflected in the transferred data.

#### Tip

- Offline mode is set while transferring data from a memory card. When data transfer is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Depending on the amount of entries, it may take some time to restore Phone Book from the memory card.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.

14

# Restoring Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)

Transfer data on the SoftBank handset (except 3G) that is stored in the memory card to the handset.

Main ► Tools ► Backup

**1** Select Transfer  $All \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  From non-3 $G \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Select data→•

● To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press  $\boxed{}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Mark  $All/Unmark All \rightarrow \boxed{}$ 

Press 

(Read)→

Enter your security code (page 1-22)

#### Note

- Some data created on the SoftBank handset (PDC) may not be restored to the handset.
- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security settings on the data restored to the handset are not reflected in the transferred data.

#### Tip

- Offline mode is set while transferring data from a memory card. When data transfer is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Transferred data is saved in the corresponding data folders on your handset respectively.

# **Deleting Backup Data**

Data in the memory card transferred from the handset can be deleted collectively or individually.

**1** Select Transfer  $All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete\ Data \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**Deleting All Data** 

Select  $All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Select Select Data  $\rightarrow \bullet$  Select data  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

Deleting Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/ Notepad

Select data→

● To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press ☑ (Menu)→*Mark All/Unmark All*→ ■

**3** Press  $\square$  (Delete) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \square$ 

# **Backing up Function Settings**

Back up settings to a memory card and use it when restoring handset settings.

# **Transferring to Memory Card**

Main menu Tools Backup

- **1** Select  $Relocate \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow Backup \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select an item→
  - To select another item, repeat this step.
  - lacktriangle To select/deselect all items, press  $\[ \overline{\mathbf{w}} \]$  (Menu)  $\ o$   $\ o$   $\ o$   $\ o$   $\ o$   $\ o$   $\ o$
- **3** Press 
  (Trans.)→
  →
   → Enter a File Code→
  Re-enter the code→
  (twice)→
  ■

A File Code is required for each backup file. The code is required when restoring settings to the handset.

#### Note

 Do not forget File Code and do not reveal it to others. If necessary, write down code.

#### Tip

 Handset switches to offline mode during backup. Once backup is completed, offline mode is canceled.

# **Restoring Settings**

Setting data of the handset or another SoftBank handset stored in the memory card can be restored to the handset.



- **1** Select  $Relocate \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$  your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow Restore|From\ non-3G \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select setting data→ → Enter the security code for backups→ ♀ (twice)→ ●

Setting data is restored, and the handset automatically restarts.

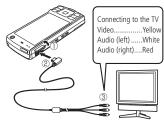
#### Tip

- Offline mode is set while restoring data from a memory card. When restoration is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- After selecting setting data, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   Delete/Details

# **Viewing Images on External Devices**

Connect handset to a TV using the video output cable (optional) to display camera and video files. Also view exportable S! Appli (chapter 19) saved on your handset or memory card.

- 1 Open the earphone microphone/AV OUT jack cover of your handset (1)
- 2 Insert the video output cable plug into the earphone microphone/AV OUT jack (②)
- Connect the video output cable to the video input jacks of the TV (3)



- **4** Open a file on your handset $\rightarrow$ Press and hold  $\stackrel{\square}{\Longrightarrow} \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - To return output from TV to Display, press and hold ......

#### Note

- Some files may not be viewed on TV.
- The video output cannot be switched to TV while recording a video or when the delay timer (page 7-18) is activated.
- When plugging/unplugging video output cable, make sure the plug is parallel to handset jack.

# **Setting the TV System**

The TV systems supported by your handset are NTSC (Japan and U.S.A.) and PAL (Europe). SECAM is not supported.

1 Select NTSC/PAL→

■

# **Using International Call Service**

When making an international call, simply add the international code and then select a country code from a list after entering the other party's phone number. Also change the international code and add entries to the country code list

A separate application is required for using the international call service.
 For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

## **Changing the International Code**



1 Select *Intl. Code*→ ■ →Enter your security code (page 1-22)

The default international code appears.

**2** Enter the new code→

# Adding an Entry to the Country Code List

The country code list already includes the country codes of 17 countries. You can also edit and add entries. The list can contain up to 20 entries.



- **1** Select CountryNumber→ ■
- **3** Enter a country name→
  - **4** Enter a country code→ ■

The country code is added.

#### Tip

After selecting a country name in the country code list, press v
 (Menu) to perform the following:

#### Edit/Delete\*

\* Only the entries for the three additional country codes can be deleted.

14

# **Shortcut Menu**

If you assign frequently used functions to the Shortcut menu, you will be able to access them guickly and easily.

# **Setting the Shortcut Menu**

Up to 40 items of the handset's functions can be registered. Names and icons of the registered functions can be changed.

Access a function you want to assign→ 🕞

Press (Assign)

The following functions are assigned as defaults.

Create Message

 Message Box Calendar

· Main Menu • Time Table

 Media Player JPN Dictionary

ENG-JPN Dictionary

JPN-ENG Dictionary

Calculator

• IC Card Lock

# **Accessing a Function from the Shortcut Menu**

In Standby, press 🕞

Select a function→

#### Note

• Up to two functions can be called up from the shortcut menu.

Tip

- If there is information you haven't viewed, the indicator appears on Information Prompt (page 1-8), and you can view the information.
- If you call up a file registered in the shortcut menu, certain operations may not be available.

# **Editing the Function Names**

- In Standby, press 🕫
- Select a function  $\rightarrow \boxed{}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Edit\ Title \rightarrow \boxed{}$
- Enter a title→[•]

• The names of preset functions (left) cannot be changed.

# **Changing the Shortcut Icons**

- In Standby, press 🕫
- Select a function  $\rightarrow [\nabla r]$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Change\ Icon \rightarrow [\bullet]$

Setting an Icon Preinstalled in Your Handset Select **Preset Icons** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an icon $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card Select **Phone Memory/Memory Card**→ Select an image →  $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Use  $\stackrel{\blacksquare}{\bullet}$  to adjust the position of the image to clip  $\rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\square}{\triangleright}$  (Cut) →[ • ]

#### Tip

• The icons of preset functions (page 14-34) cannot be changed.

# **Moving Icons**

- 1 In Standby, press 🕞
- **2** Select a function  $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Arrange\ Icons \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$
- **3** Select a destination→

# **Deleting Shortcut Icons**

- 1 In Standby, press 🕟
- **2** Select a function→¬¬¬ (Menu)

Deleting One Shortcut Icon

Select  $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**Deleting All Shortcut Icons** 

Select **Delete All** $\rightarrow$  $\blacksquare$  $\rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ **YES** $\rightarrow$  $\blacksquare$ 

#### Tip

 The preset functions (page 14-34) cannot be deleted from the shortcut menu.

# **Sending Touch Tones**

Send touch tones to use interactive voice response services and other types of touchtone services.

# Sending Individual Touch Tones

1 Press any of the Delto Selection, \* i and # keys during a call

# **Sending Touch Tones Sequentially**

Phone Book is useful for storing sequences of touch tones (page 4-2) for remotely operating your home answering machine and other devices.

- After the handset is connected, press 📨 (Menu)
- Select the phone number containing the touch tones→☑ (Menu)
- **4** Select *Send Tone*→
  - You can send up to 32 touch tones at one time.

# Using the Pause (P) for Sending Touch Tones

The pause "P" allows you to send sequences of touch tones, each separated with a pause "P". It is convenient if you register multiple touch tones such as remote operation numbers of your home phone.

#### **Saving Touch Tones to Phone Book**

Example: Save the following three numbers.

Phone number : *03-123X-XXX3* 

Answering machine code : #7777

Answering machine playback code : #1

Save 03123XXXX3P#7777P#1 as the phone number of an entry

• For details on registering a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

#### **Sending Touch Tones**

1 Open a Phone Book entry containing the touch tones

• For details on how to access a Phone Book entry, see page 4-7.

Press 🖊

A call is made to the phone number before the first "P".

3 Press

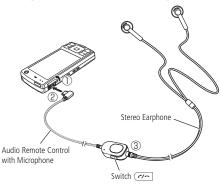
The sequence of touch tones before the next "P" is sent.

Repeat this step until all the touch tones have been sent.

# Using the Audio Remote Control with Microphone (Optional)

If the audio remote control with microphone (optional) is attached to the stereo earphone (optional) and connected to the handset, simply pressing the switch of the audio remote control allows you to dial a preset phone number or answer a call. When Auto Answer is set, you can answer calls without pressing the switch.

- **1** Open the earphone microphone jack cover (1)
- 2 Insert the plug of the audio remote control with microphone into the earphone microphone jack (②)
- 3 Connect the audio remote control with microphone and the stereo earphone (3)



#### Note

 When plugging or unplugging the plug to/from the earphone microphone/AV OUT jack, the plug must be parallel with the jack.

# **Setting the Phone Number**



- **1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select *Set Number*→

## Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select  $Phone Book \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a phone number \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

#### **Entering a Phone Number Directly**

Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (twice)

# **One-touch Calling**

- 1 In Standby, press and hold // of the remote control
  - If you press and hold of the remote control again during dialing, the call is canceled.
- 2 Press and hold of the remote control to end the call
  - Alternatively, you can press = to end the call.

# **One-touch Answering**

- 1 When a call is received, press and hold of of the remote control
- Press and hold of of the remote control to end the call
  - Alternatively, you can press = to end the call.

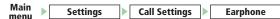
#### Tip

 When the audio remote control with microphone and stereo earphone are connected and plugged in while the handset is in manner mode (page 12-1), a ringtone set in the normal mode sounds through the earphone.

## **Setting Auto Answer**

Set to answer a call without pressing the switch when the audio remote control with microphone and stereo earphone are connected. Also change the length of time before a call is answered.

 Regardless of the manner mode setting (page 12-1), a beep sound is produced from the speakers and earphones and a voice call connection is established automatically.



- **2** Select *Set Duration*  $\rightarrow$  Enter the answer time  $\rightarrow$

#### Note

- If you set Auto Answer and the Answering Machine (page 14-7), Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you set Auto Answer and Voice Mail (page 16-4), the one with shorter answering time is given priority. If the answering time is the same, Voice Mail is given priority.

# **About Idokoro Mail**

Inform of your arrival or departure by mail notification when you arrive or leave a specified area (Arrival/Departure Mail), and send your location information by a simple operation (Simple Notice).

#### Note

- The Arrival/Departure Mail and Simple Notice cannot be created if there
  is not enough memory. Delete sent messages or unnecessary messages
  in the *Unsent* message box (page 17-18) or change the Auto-delete
  setting (page 17-14) to *Set*.
- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, the handset position
  can be determined by the base station information. However, depending
  on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error
  could vary from hundreds of meters to several kilometers in radius.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- Positioning cannot be performed when the positioning function is locked (page 21-4).
- Communication fees are charged for sending the Arrival/Departure Mail and Simple Notice, and for the positioning service.

#### Tip

 The Idokoro Mail function identifies the handset location using GPS and sends the location information as a mail attachment to the specified people.

# Saving People to the Recipients List

Save the people you want to notify about your location to the notification list. You can save up to five people to the list.

Main 

Tools 

Useful Tools 

Idokoro Mail

- Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ Recipients List $\rightarrow$
- 2 Select an empty field on the Recipients List→

  → Recipient→

  → Select a person from Phone

  Book→

  → Select a phone number or email

  address→

  ■
- 3 Select various notification mails (page 15-3)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $Yes | No \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 4 Press 

  ☐ (OK)

#### Tip

 Press (Menu) while the Recipients List is displayed to perform the following:

#### Delete/Delete All

 The phone number or email address saved to the Recipients List is retained even if the relevant Phone Book entry is deleted.

# **Saving Areas to the Areas List**

When the handset leaves or arrives at a specified area, Departure Mail or Arrival Mail is sent to people who have been set as **Yes** for departure or arrival notification on the Recipients List. You can save up to seven areas to the Areas List.

			_	
Main menu	Tools	Useful Tools	•	Idokoro Mail
IIIeiiu			_	

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)→Areas List
- 2 Select an empty field on the Areas List→ 

  Area Name→ 

  → Enter the area name→ 

  →

#### **To Set Your Current Position**

Select *Current*→ ■ → Start positioning

#### To Select from the Location Logs

Select  $Location \ Logs \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select location information  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### To Select from Location Memos

Select My  $Locations \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\longrightarrow$  Select location information  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### To Select from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* → □ → Select a Phone Book entry that has location information → □

4 Select Launch Setting→ → Set a time range in which Arrival Mail or Departure Mail will be sent To Specify the Date

Select  $Select\ Date \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Date \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter\ a\ date \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Arrivals\ Time/Departures\ Time \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter\ the$  start time and duration  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare (0K)$ 

#### To Specify the Day

Select  $Weekly \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Arrive/Depart$  for the day you want to specify  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow E$ nter the start time and duration  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow E$ 

# **5** Press ☐ (OK)

Tip

- You can enable or disable an Areas List entry by pressing (ON/OFF) while the entry is selected on the Areas List.
- Positioning accuracy is indicated in three levels. Level 3 is the most accurate. If accuracy is level 1, it is recommended that you move to a new location and try again.
- Press (Menu) while an Areas List entry is selected to perform the following:

#### Delete/Delete All

 Press (Menu) while creating the Areas List to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected item):

#### Reset/Show Details

# **Sending Notification Mail**

Arrival Mail or Departure Mail is sent when the handset arrives in or leaves from a specified area. Simple Notice allows you to easily notify people of your location.

# Leaving or Arriving in the Specified Area

When the handset leaves or arrives at the specified area during the specified time, Departure Mail or Arrival Mail is sent to the people who have been set as **Yes** for sending Departure Mail or Arrival Mail on the Recipients List (page 15-1).

## **Sending Simple Notice of Your Location**

You can easily notify of your location by sending Simple Notice to the people who have been set as **Yes** on the Recipients List (page 15-1).

# 1 In Standby, press and hold A

Positioning starts and notification of your location is sent automatically.

#### Tin

- Sent Arrival Mail, Departure Mail and Simple Notice messages are stored in the *Idokoro* folder in the *Sent* message box. If a Phone Book entry on the Recipients List is deleted, messages are stored in the *General* folder in the *Sent* message box.
- You cannot send Simple Notice if the Side Key setting (page 12-11) is set to anything other than SimpleNotice.

# **Optional Services**

- For details on services, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- If you are out of the service area, you cannot operate the service from the handset.

Call Forward	Use this service to forward calls to a preset phone number (page 16-2).
Voice Mail	This service allows a caller to leave a message at the Voice Mail Center when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress (page 16-4).  • Missed Call Notification  Information Prompt (page1-8) notifies you of calls that your handset could not receive while outside the service area or handset was powered off.
Call Waiting	This service allows you to place a call on hold to receive another incoming call (page 16-5).
Multiparty Call	Make or receive a call during a call and talk to multiple parties simultaneously (page 16-6).

Call Barring	international calls (page 16-7).
Caller ID	This service allows you to notify your phone number to the other party when you make a call and allows you to confirm the phone number of a caller (page 12-13).

Stop all outgoing and incoming calls including

# **Call Forward**

Calls and video calls are transferred to a specified phone if the handset is OFF or is out of the service area. If **All Calls** is selected for the transfer conditions, " " (Voice/Video), " (Voice Call) or " (Video Call) is displayed in Standby.

# Setting/Activating Call Forward



**1** Select Call Fwd ON→ →Voice Call|Video Call| Voice/Video→ ■

• To confirm the current Call Forward setting, select *Status*.

#### **Diverting All Calls to the Preset Number**

The ringtone does not sound before forwarding the call. Select **All Calls**  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

**Diverting Calls You do not Answer within the Set Time**Select *No Answer* 

Select the answer time 

The select the answer time 

The select the answer time 

The select 

The select

**2** Set a phone number

#### Selecting an Entry from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* → ■ → Select an entry → ■ → Select a phone number → ■ (twice) → Connect to the network automatically → ■

# **Entering a Phone Number Directly**

Select  $Phone \ Number \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)  $\rightarrow$  Connect to the network automatically  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select *Call Log*  $\longrightarrow$  Select a phone number  $\longrightarrow$  (twice)  $\longrightarrow$  Connect to the network automatically  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### Note

- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously, but Call Forward for video calls is available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward while you are using Voice Mail, Voice Mail is deactivated.
- Call Forward cannot be used while All Outgoings or All Incomings is selected for Call Barring (page 16-7) (priority is given to Call Barring).
- When forwarding a video call, set a destination phone that supports 3G-324M standard video calls. The video call will not be forwarded if the destination phone does not support 3G-324M video calls.

#### Tip

- You cannot set the following phone numbers as forwarding numbers.
  - Phone numbers starting from "1" (ex. 110, 119, 118)
  - Phone numbers starting from "0120" (toll-free numbers)
  - Phone numbers starting from 00 (ex. international phone number prefix 001 or 0041)
  - Phone numbers starting from "0990" (dial Q2 and others)
- When both Call Forward and Answering Machine (page 14-7) are set, the function with the shorter ring time takes priority.

Answering Machine ring time ......9 seconds

In this case, Answering Machine takes priority, but priority may change depending on signal strength.

## Receiving calls after activating Call Forward

- •If you press / while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to a caller.
  - If you set All Calls, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to a forwarding number.

# **Deactivating Call Forward/Voice Mail**



- Select  $DeactivateAll \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - To confirm the current Call Forward/Voice Mail settings, select Status

#### Note

- If you select **DeactivateAll**, both Call Forward and Voice Mail are deactivated
- If you are not using Call Forward nor Voice Mail (page 16-4), and you want to reject a call, press (Divert) while the phone is ringing.

# **Voice Mail**

Transfer calls to Voice Mail Center (ie: when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress). If you set *All Calls* in the forward settings to forward calls to the Voice Mail Center, """ is displayed in Standby. When the Voice Mail Center receives a new message, Information Prompt (page 1-8) appears if the Missed Call Notification function (page 16-5) is set.

" appears when you have a new message.

# **Activating Voice Mail**



- **Select** *Voice Mail ON*→
  - To confirm the current Voice Mail setting, select *Status*.
- Select  $No\ Answer \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select the answer time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - If you select All Calls, calls are forwarded to the Voice Mail Center without ringing or vibrating the handset.

#### Note

- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously, but Call Forward for video calls is available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Voice Mail while you are using Call Forward, Call Forward is deactivated.
- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be used while All Outgoings or All Incomings is selected for Call Barring (page 16-7) (priority is given to Call Barring).

#### **Receiving calls after activating Voice Mail**

- If you press 
  while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to a caller.
  - If you set All Calls, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to the Voice Mail Center.

#### **Voice Mail service**

 The Voice Mail has several functions such as recording an answering message and using a Voice Mail message. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

# **Listening to Your Voice Mail**



**1** Select Listen  $VM \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Tip

 To access Voice Mail messages while overseas, dial +819066514170 (connection fees apply).

#### **Missed Call Notification**

Information Prompt (page 1-8) notifies you about the calls that the handset could not receive because it was out of the service area or the power was off while Voice Mail was set. If Voice Mail Center receives a message while you are on another line, the handset receives a notification.

1 In Standby, enter 1414 and press  $\checkmark$ 

Follow the voice prompts.

Tip

- You can also set it with the procedures below.
   Main menu → Settings → Call Settings → Call Services →
   Missed Calls →
- To set from a fixed-line phone in Japan, dial 0906651414.
- To set from outside Japan, dial +819066514191 (connection fees apply).

# **Call Waiting**

Call Waiting service enables you to answer a newly received voice call while you are talking on another voice call. Also use this service to put your current voice call on hold while you make a voice call to someone else.

This service is unavailable for Video calls.

# **Setting/Activating Call Waiting**



**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

To confirm the current Call Waiting setting, select Status.

# **Using Call Waiting**

1 During a call, the Call Waiting tone is heard

The name and phone number of the caller appear on the display.

**2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Answer \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

The original caller is placed on hold and a connection is established with the second caller. Both original and second names are displayed.

# **Optional Services**

#### Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voice Mail Center or the forwarding number. When active service is set to All Calls, Call Waiting is disabled.
- To forward a call received while you are on another line, set No Answer for the Call Forward.
- When the Call Waiting tone is heard, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Answer/End & Answer/Reject Call/Divert/End All Calls

# Switching between Two Callers

**1** During Call Waiting, press **2**<sup>∞</sup> ✓

● Press 🖅 🖊 to switch between callers.

# If a caller terminates a call during Call Waiting

● A ringtone sounds and the screen displays *Holding*. Press ✓ to start talking with a person on hold.

# **Multiparty Call**

Call other parties during a call and switch between the parties or talk to multiple parties simultaneously. Connect with up to five parties simultaneously.

• This service is unavailable for video calls.

# Making Calls to Other Parties during a Call

**1** During a call, enter a phone number→✓

The original party is placed on hold and you can talk to another party.

● You can select a phone number from Phone Book (page 4-7) or call log (page 2-6) after pressing ☑ (Menu).

## Switching Your Connection between Parties

- **1** During a call, enter a phone number→✓
- Press ₽₽ ✓
  - Press 🗷 🗸 to switch between callers.

## If a caller terminates a call during a call

● A ringtone sounds and the screen displays *Holding*. Press ✓ to start talking with a person on hold.

# **Talking to All Parties**

- **1** During a call, enter a phone number→✓
- 2 When the other party answers, press 💌 (Menu)
- **3** Select  $Multiparty \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Multiparty \rightarrow \bigcirc$

You can talk to all parties.

# Pressing 🗃 during a Multiparty call

End calls with all parties.

# Ending a line during a Multiparty call

Other lines remain connected.

#### Talking to the selected party only

# **Call Barring**

Restrict outgoing and incoming voice calls, video calls and SMS messages.

# **Activating Call Barring**



■ To confirm the current Call Barring setting, select *Status*.

#### **Restricting Outgoing Calls**

Select *Outgoing Call* → ■ → Select a barring condition → ■ → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-22) → Connect to the network automatically → ■

All Outgoings : Stop all outgoing calls.

All Out-Intl. : Stop all outgoing international calls.

Out-Intl.\* : Stop all outgoing international calls except to Japan.

\* The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the USIM card.

#### **Restricting Incoming Calls**

Select *Incoming Call* → ■ → Select a barring condition → ■ → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-22) → Connect to the network automatically → ■

All Incomings: Stop all Incoming calls.

All If Roamed: Stop all Incoming international calls.

- \* The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the USIM card.
- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

#### Note

- You can still make emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) when the call barring service is activated.
- You cannot use All Outgoings and All Incomings if you have started using the Call Forward or Voice Mail service. (Call Forward or Voice Mail is given priority.)
- If call barring service code (page 1-22) is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, Call Barring settings are locked. Change call barring service code and center access code (page 1-22). For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

#### Tip

 If a call is made while Call Barring is active, a message informs you that Call Barring is set. The message may not appear immediately, depending on your location. If message does not appear, check your Call Barring settings.

# **Deactivating Call Barring**



- 1 Select Cancel All→ → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-22)→Connect to the network automatically →
  - After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

# **Changing Your Call Barring Service Code**



- **1** Select Security Code→ ■
- 2 Enter your current call barring service code
- 3 Enter your new call barring service code→
- 4 Re-enter your new call barring service code for confirmation→
  - After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

# **About Messaging**

#### S! Mail

Exchange long text messages, pictures, sounds, vObjects, etc. with other SoftBank handsets. PCs and other devices connected to the Internet.

• To use S! Mail and receive email, an additional contract is required.

#### **SMS**

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

#### Tip

#### Retry Function

When the other party's handset is turned off or out of range, the message is stored on the Server Mail Box and will be sent when the signal is available.

# **Customizing Handset Address**

Change the account name (part before @) of your handset address. (Default)

] @softbank.ne.jp

(Custom)

Enter Account Name@softbank.ne.jp

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- This operation uses Yahoo! Keitai access.
- Before using Mail, retrieve the network connection information (page 12-14).
- Changing your email address is an effective way of preventing spam.
- **1** In Standby, press ▽→設定・申込 (Settings/Applications)
- **2** Select *各種変更手続き* (Changing Applications)→ ■
  →オリジナルメール設定(メール各種設定)(Original Mail/Mail settings)→
  - Follow the onscreen instructions.

#### Tip

You can also change your email address with the procedures below.
 Main menu → Messaging → Settings → Mail Address

# **Displaying New Messages**

When a message is received, animation plays while the ringtone is playing. The "" indicator appears at the top of the display. When you receive a "Feeling Mail" message, a pictograph that shows an emotion (emoticon) is displayed. Received messages are saved to *Received*.

See in Information Prompt (page 1-8) whether there are any unread received messages. When there are any unread "Feeling Mail" messages, the emoticon of the last received "Feeling Mail" message is displayed in the background of Information Prompt.

- In Received, there are a general folder, Ku-man folder, Idokoro folder and 17 user folders. You can save received messages to your specified folder (page 17-14).
- When you receive an S! Mail message, the reception method varies depending on how big the file is or if there are any attachments. If the message reception method has been set to All (page 17-23), all the contents are received automatically.
- **1** When Information Prompt appears, select *New Messages*→
- **2** Select a folder→ Select a message → •

#### Tip

- If you receive a message during a call, an electronic tone will sound.
- If you send a message when delivery check (page 17-22) is set to Ask, you will receive a mail delivery report.

# **Checking New Messages**

Main Messaging

**1** Select *Retrieve New*→

## When There Is Not Enough Memory for New Incoming Messages

If someone attempts to send you a message when there is not enough memory on your handset, you won't be able to receive it. When this happens, a warning message will appear. When you fail to receive a message, the "" indicator appears in Standby. Delete unnecessary messages (page 17-18).

#### Note

- S! Mail notifications, that are not received because of insufficient memory, won't be sent again by the Retry function (page 17-1). Obtain the Mail List (page 17-19) and receive them. For re-sending mail reception notifications, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- When Auto-delete (page 17-14) is set to Set and memory becomes full, the oldest read message is automatically deleted when a new message is received. Protected messages (page 17-17) are not deleted automatically.

# If You Receive a New Message When You Are Not in Standby

When you set Priority setting (page 12-13) for message reception to *Pause*, and if you receive a new message while operating your handset, a confirmation window will appear asking you whether you want to read it now or later. If you want to read the new message now, select *Read Now*. Select *Later* if you are going to read it later.

# **Checking Received Messages**

If you have changed Retrieve Mode (page 17-23) from the default setting **All** and someone sends you an S! Mail message that meets any of the following criteria, the message will temporarily be stored on Server Mail Box and the initial portion of the message is sent as an S! Mail notification. When you receive an S! Mail notification, the "==" indicator appears on the display.

- When an S! Mail exceeds 284 characters (284 bytes)
- When a file is attached
- When multiple addresses are specified
- When the subject contains 41 or more single-byte characters
- When the sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters



#### **Retrieving the Complete S! Mail**

Select an S! Mail notification  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  *Retrieve Mail*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

#### Note

- If you receive the rest of the message, transmission fees may be charged on the recipient's side. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- It may be impossible to display/play a file until you obtain a content key (content license) depending on the file. If you cancel while in the process of receiving content key, it will be sent to you after a while.
- Messages exceeding 300 KB cannot be retrieved.

#### Tip

- Alternatively, you can press in Standby to access the Messaging menu.
- When a new SMS with 161 or more single-byte characters is received, the messages will be combined automatically. While receiving a combined message, the message *Linking SMS*. is displayed in the Received message in the Message Box.
- To receive complete messages automatically, set Retrieve Mode (page 17-23) to All.
- You can reply or forward (page 17-15) messages from received messages.

# Forwarding Messages from Server Mail Box

When you receive an S! Mail notification, manually forward the message from the Server Mail Box to your PC or other device.

- 1 Open an S! Mail notification→ (Menu)→ Divert
- **2** Select Server Mail→

  ■
- **3** Select *KeeplDo not Keep*  $\rightarrow$  **Enter an address** 
  - For details on how to enter address, see page 17-4.
- 4 Press 
  ☐ (Divert)

# Creating & Sending an S! Mail

Send a long message with up to 15,000 double-byte characters/30,720 single-byte characters or a message with images and melodies attached.

You can send an S! Mail message of up to 300 KB including the address, subject, body text and attachment files. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the data size of the attached file.

Main menu Messaging Create New

# **1** Select *Address* → • Enter an address

 Specify a phone number (up to 24 digits) or an email address (up to 254 characters). Up to 20 addresses are allowed with To, Cc, and Bcc combined

#### **Selecting an Address from Phone Book**

Select  $Phone Book \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an entry  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  a phone number/email address  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \blacksquare$ 

#### **Entering a Phone Number/Email Address Directly**

Select  $Phone \ Number/Email \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a phone number/email address \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

## **Selecting from Simple Input**

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 17-21) and enter.

Select *Simple Input*→ ■ → Select an entry → ■

# Selecting an Address from the Sent/Received Log

Select **Sent Log/Received Log**  $\longrightarrow$  Select a log  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### **Selecting an Address from a Group**

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Group (page 17-21) and enter them.

Select *Group*→ ■ → Select a group → ■

- **2** Select  $Subject \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a subject  $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select  $Text \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a message  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$

#### Inserting a Phone Number, etc.

Phone numbers, emoticons, and phrases can be inserted from Notepad, Signature, Phone Book, owner information, Sent log, etc. (page 3-13).

# 4 Attach files

- For details on how to attach files, see page 17-7.

The message is sent.

 If you select Notify Only Once, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

#### Note

- When there is insufficient memory, you cannot create a message. Delete unnecessary messages in *Message Box* (page 17-18) or set Autodelete to *Set* (page 17-14).
- If the other party's handset doesn't support S! Mail, it might be displayed differently.

#### Tip

 By pressing and holding \( \bigcirc / \bigcirc \) in Standby, you can view Sent log/ Received log. You can also create S! Mail by selecting a log and pressing \( \bigcirc \) (Mail).

# **Available Options When You Enter an Address**

An address can be added or deleted after you enter it. Also save it to Phone Book, change the address type, or set the category.

# 1 In the Create Message window, select the address field

#### **Adding Recipients**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Add Address $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  Select an address $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$ 

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.

#### **Deleting One Recipient**

Press  $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select a recipient  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{w}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  One

#### **Deleting All Recipients**

Press **Y** (Menu)→**Delete All**→

#### **Deleting Multiple Recipients**

Press  $\longrightarrow \searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Select recipients  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)

#### Storing a Recipient's Information in Phone Book

Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a recipient  $\rightarrow$   $\checkmark$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Save  $Sender \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Add  $New/Add \rightarrow \bullet$ 

See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.

#### Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Press  $\longrightarrow$  Select a recipient  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  (OK)

**To**: The recipient's address.

Cc : Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses. Addresses entered in the Cc (carbon copy) field are also displayed to the other recipients.

**Bcc**: Addresses entered in the **Bcc** (blind carbon copy) field are not displayed to the other recipients.

#### **Registering All Addresses into a Group**

Press ☑ (Menu)→*To Group*→ ■ (twice)→Select a group→ ■
→Enter a group name→ ■

# **Available Options When You Enter a Text**

Text can be edited or deleted after you enter it. Also insert a mail template or save entered text as a template.

# 1 In the Create Message window, select the text

## **Editing the Text**

Press  $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Edit the text $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

#### **Deleting the Text**

Press 🖅 (Menu)→*Clear Field*→ 🔳

#### Switching the Text to Mail Template

 If you call up a template while creating a message, a confirmation window appears asking you whether you want to delete text and insert the template. The message you have created will be deleted if you select YES.

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Switch Templ.  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  Switch  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Phone Memory/Memory Card  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a template  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Edit the text  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Saving the Entered Text as a Template

Press ☑ (Menu)→Save Template→ ■→Edit a title→ ■→
Phone Memory/Memory Card → ■

# **Decorating the Text**

This function allows you to make your message more visually appealing by changing the size and color of text, background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message. Also decorate the text easily using mail templates for creating messages.

1 In the Create Message window, select the text→

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow \checkmark$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Arrange \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

The Arrange window appears.

# **Decorate the text**

# **Changing Font Color/Font Size**

Select *Font Color/Font Size* → ■ → Select a color/size → ■ → Enter a message

#### Blinking/Scrolling/Swinging a Text

Select *Blink/Telop/Swing* → ■ → Enter a message

#### **Aligning a Text**

Select  $LineUp \longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow$ Select the position of the entered text $\longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow$ Enter a message

# **Inserting a Line**

Select **Partition**→

# Inserting an Image/Sound/My Pictograms item

Select *Picture/Sound/MyPictograms* → ■→Select an image/ sound/My Pictograms item → ■

#### 

#### **Deleting Decorations Individually**

# **Deleting All Decorations**

Select  $Cancel \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \ All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Tip

- When you decorate message text, the " \( \mathbb{M}" \) indicator appears on the display. If you press \( \mathbb{Y} \) (Menu) and select \( \textit{Preview} \), the text preview will be displayed.
- If you send a decorated message to a device (PC, for example) other than an HTML-enabled SoftBank handset, decorated parts may not be displayed properly.
- Animation files preinstalled in *Pictures* folder of Data Folder can be inserted when you select *Picture*. For the items which can be inserted, see Arrange-picture List (page 24-16).

# **Changing the Decorations**

By selecting a range of entered text, decorations such as color, size, flashing, telop, swing, and alignments can be set. Also change/reset the decorations.

- 1 In the Create Message window, select the text→

   →Enter a message
- Press (Range•paste)→Start→ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → → Arrange → ■
- **3** Decorate the selected text

**Deleting the Decorations of the Selected Text**Select *Cancel* → Select a decoration → (Delete)

#### **Using Mail Template**

Decorate the text easily by inserting the mail template.

**2** Select a mail template→ • → Edit the text→ •

#### Tip

 When there is already text entered in the message, a confirmation window appears asking whether to insert the template and delete the entered text.

## **Attaching Files**

Attach an image or melody to an S! Mail.

1 In the Create Message window, select  $Files \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Attaching a File Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
Select Data Folder→ → Phone Memory/Memory Card→ → Select a file→ ●

Taking a Picture to Attach

Select *Take Picture* $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  Take a picture $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

Recording a Video to Attach

Select **Record Video**  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Record a video  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

**Setting Auto Playback for an Attached File** 

● Only one attached file can be set for Auto Playback. Select an attached file  $\neg v$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Auto~Play \rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow ON/OFF$   $\rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow Display/Do~not~Display \rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow v$  Enter message to be displayed when the file is played  $\rightarrow v$ 

#### Note

 Some files may not be attached to a message depending on the type. To find out whether a certain file can be attached or not, see Details of the file (page 10-9).

#### Tip

- When selecting the file in a folder, select a folder and press .
- You may not be able to set Auto Playback for some files.
- Auto Playback setting will be canceled automatically if you enter an email address for the recipient, or if you decorate the text using Arrange.
- While selecting the attached file, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete/Auto Play/Details

# **Feeling Setting**

A Feeling setting is a feature which can notify the recipient a new message with the emoticon.

In the Create Message window, select Feeling→
Select the Feeling icon→

#### Note

 When you send a message with an emoticon to a handset that doesn't support the Feeling setting, the emoticon is displayed as a regular pictograph on the subject field.

#### **Other Functions**

# 1 Open the Create Message window

# Switching the Mail Type to SMS

Select  $Type \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow SMS \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

- If a message contains something that cannot be sent using SMS, a confirmation window will appear. The contents which cannot be sent will be deleted if you select *Change*.
- If a message exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window will appear. By selecting *Cut to Fit* SMS, you can delete part of the message so it won't exceed the number of maximum characters.

# Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts

Press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  To Drafts $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Save \rightarrow \square$ 

# Checking the Content Before Sending a Message Press (Sept) or (Menu)→Preview→ ■

# Select *Options* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ *DeliveryCheck* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ *ON/OFF* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

## Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the Service Center to Recipients

Select  $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Delivery \ Time \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select the delivery time  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select *Options* → ■ → *Expiry* → ■ → Select the expiry time → ■ **Setting the Message Priority Level** 

Select *Options*  $\rightarrow Priority \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Select$  the priority  $\rightarrow \square$ 

#### **Setting/Canceling Your Reply to Address**

# Deleting Checked Received Messages on the Sender's Side Automatically

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Self-delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- If you change the message type from S! Mail to SMS, the following items are deleted.
  - Email address/Cc and Bcc setting/Subject/Attached file/Mail template and Arrange settings/Feeling setting

#### Tip

- If you haven't set the date or time on *Delivery Time*, messages are sent out immediately.
- S! Mail messages saved on the Server Mail Box are deleted automatically when the specified expiry time is reached.

# **Creating & Sending an SMS Message**

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets. Up to 70 characters (140 bytes) can be sent if they include double-byte and single-byte katakana or pictographs. If all the characters are single-byte alphanumerics or single-byte symbols, up to 160 characters can be sent.

Main Messaging Create New

**1** Select  $Text \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter a message \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select  $Address \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a phone number$ 

**Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book** 

Select *Phone Book*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select an entry  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select a phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

**Entering a Phone Number Directly** 

Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

Selecting from Simple Input

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 17-21) and enter them.

Select *Simple Input*→ ■ → Select an entry → ■

Selecting a Phone Number from the Sent Log/Received Log

Select **Sent Log/Received Log** $\rightarrow$  Select a log $\rightarrow$ 

**Selecting Phone Numbers from a Group** 

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to a Group (page 17-21) and enter them.

Select  $Group \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a group \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**3** Press  $\square$  (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \square$ 

The message is sent.

 If you select Notify Only Once, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

#### Note

- When you send a message, transmission fees will be charged for every recipient entered in the address field.
- If Fixed Dialing Number (page 13-8) is set to ON and SMS Center Number ("+819066519300") and Address are not saved to Number List (page 13-9), you cannot send an SMS message.

#### Tip

- After Step 2, press (Menu) to perform the following: *Preview/To Drafts/Add Address/Delete All/Save Sender/To Group*
- By pressing and holding \( \bigcirc / \bigcirc \) in Standby, you can view Sent log/ Received log. You can also create SMS by selecting a log and pressing
   (Mail).

#### Other Functions

When you send an SMS message, the following options are available. The options can be configured in advance (pages 17-21, 17-22).

Open the Create Message window

Switching the Mail Type to S! Mail

Select  $Tvpe \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow S! Mail \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select *Options*  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Expiry \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Select the expiry time} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipient

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Note

- By performing the following operations, you can also change the mail type from SMS to S! Mail automatically. If these items are deleted, the message type will be reset to SMS automatically. Add email address/Set Cc/Bcc setting/Enter Subject/Attach file/Set Feeling setting
- By pressing (Menu) and selecting *Templates* or *Arrange* while entering text, a confirmation window will appear asking you whether you want to switch from SMS to S! Mail. If you want to switch to S! Mail, select *Change to S!Mail*. If you want to create a message as an SMS message, select *Cut to Fit SMS*. If you select *Edit Message*, you can go back to editing the message.

Tip

• Saved SMS messages are deleted when the specified expiry time is reached

# **Drafts**

Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts

Main Messaging **Create New** 

- Select an item→ ( ) → Enter/edit the selected item  $\rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \bullet \end{bmatrix}$
- Press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow To Drafts \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Save \rightarrow \square$

**Editing/Sending Draft Messages** 

Main Messaging **Drafts** 

- Select a message  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$
- Edit the selected item $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow \square$  (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \square$

- While selecting a message in the Drafts message list, press 🔀 (Menu) to perform the following:
  - Delete/Send Multi/Display/Call Address/Save Sender/Export/ Sort by/Filter

# **Message Box**

Received and sent messages are saved to the *Received* and *Sent* message boxes respectively. Created messages that have not been sent are saved to the *Drafts* message box, and messages that have failed to be sent are saved to the *Unsent* message box.

- For details on an available amount of messages you can store, see "Storage Capacity" on page 24-17.
- When there are unread messages in *Received*, the "■" indicator appears.

# Displaying Messages in the Message Box

# Message List Window



Received Message List

- 1) Message Status
- Unread Message with Attachment(s)
- Unread Message without Attachments
- Read Message with Attachment(s)
- Read Message without Attachments

- Unread S! Mail Notification
- Read St Mail Notification
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
- Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
- Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
- Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/No Delivery Confirmation
- Sent Message without Attachments/No Delivery Confirmation
- Real Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)
- Rartly Sent Message without Attachments
- Report Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
- Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
- Report Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
- Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
- Rartly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
- Rartly Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
- Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Delivery Failed
- Unsent Message without Attachments/Delivery Failed
- Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Waiting Delivery
- Unsent Message without Attachments/Waiting Delivery
- Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Sending
- Unsent Message without Attachments/Sending
- Draft with Attachment(s)
- Draft without Attachments
- (2)S! Mail/SMS
- S! Mail
- SMS
- SMS on the USIM card

Protected

High/Not Protected

Low/Not Protected

# Setting Security for Message Box

When Security Lock is set for Message Box, Security Code (page 1-22) entry is required to open Message Box.

Main Messaging

**1** Select Message Box→¬¬ (Menu)→Security Lock
→¬¬

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)

**3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→■

Checking the Contents of the Message

Main menu Messaging

**1** Select Message Box  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)

**3** Select a folder→ ■ → Select a message → ■

# **Changing the Message Box List Display Mode**

#### Switching between Folder View and All Message View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between Folder View and All Message View.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

**1** Press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Display* $\rightarrow$ 

**2** Select Folder View→ → Folder View|All Messages → ●

## Switching between Mixed View and Separate View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between "Sent or Received" and "Sent and Received".

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box

Press ഈ (Menu)→*Display*→ ■

2 Select Received/Sent→ → Mixed View|Separate View → ■

Tip

You can also switch the Mixed View/Separate View by pressing
 (Mixed)/(a) (Each) in the Message Box.

17

Messaging

# Switching the Message List Display Mode

Main Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→
- **3** Select Display Items → Subject|Addresses → ■

Tip

You can also switch the message list display mode by pressing

# **Splitting the Message List Window**

Split the message list window into upper and lower sections in order to view the subject/address and part of body text of the currently selected message.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→
- Press → (Menu)→Display → → Change View → •

To Display a Preview (Top part) of Body Text (with Arrange Setting)

Select **Preview**→

To Display a Preview (Top Part) of Body Text (Text Only)
Select Text Only→
■

- When Subject is selected for Subject/Addresses (left), the preview window will show the other party's address. When Addresses is selected for Subject/Addresses, the subject will be displayed.
- If you do not want to split the message list window, select List Only.

# **Operations While Viewing Messages**

#### **Copying Text**

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→ **●** → Open a message
- **2** Press **Y** (Menu)→*Text Copy*→
  - Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range→ → Specify a range of text to copy

# Moving SMS Messages to Your USIM Card or Handset

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→ 
   → Open a message
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Move $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  To Folder/To USIM  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

## Displaying Details of a Message

Main menu Messaging Message Box

**1** Select a folder→ • Open a message

**2** Press  $\nabla$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  View $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  View Details $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Managing Message Folders**

Use folders to organize and manage messages saved in Message Box.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box

#### **Editing a Folder Name**

Select a folder  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Rename\ Folder \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a folder name  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# Sorting Messages to the Specified Folders Automatically Select the user folder, Ku-man folder or Idokoro folder $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow$

Sort Setting  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select the sort criteria  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Specify condition  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

- Select Person to set an individual entry in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select *Group* to set a group in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select Address to set the specified addresses that are not saved to Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select *Phone Book* to set existence or non-existence in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select *Ku-man* to set messages from Ku-man as the sort condition.
- Select *Idokoro* to set Departure Mail, Arrival Mail, and Simple Notice as the sort condition.

#### **Deleting Messages Automatically**

Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Auto-delete*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Received/Sent*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Set/Do not Set*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **Setting Security for the Selected Folder**

 You can set the handset so that it asks for the security code in order to view the messages in the selected folder. However, folder security cannot be set to *General*.

Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Security Lock  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  Lock/Unlock  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- When Auto-delete is set to Do not Set and memory becomes full, you
  cannot send/receive a message. Delete the unnecessary messages (page
  17-18).
- When Auto-delete is set to Set and memory becomes full, the oldest message is deleted when a new message is received or created.
   However, protected messages (page 17-17) will not be deleted.

#### Tip

- If a received message meets more than one sorting criterion, the order
  of priority for sorting a message is *Idokoro* → *Person* → *Group* → *Address* → *Phone Book*.
- To change the sorting criterion of a folder and re-sort, press (Menu) and select Sort.

### **Replying to Messages**

Quote sender's message when composing your reply.

 For S! Mail, a replying message has Re: automatically inserted into the front of the subject.



Select a folder→ ● → Open a message → 🖾 (Reply)

Replying by Creating a New Message

Select *Blank*→

Replying by Quoting the Received Message

Select *With Text*→

Replying by Referring the Received Message

Select *Refer*→

 To reply to the sender of a message with multiple addresses, select To Sender or To All.

#### diT

- When you quote a received message decorated by Arrange settings and reply to the sender, an outgoing message that quotes the decorations is created.
- When you quote the text of a received message to compose a new message, the quoted text is not displayed if you decorate the message by Arrange settings.
- It's impossible to quote or refer to a received message in which Auto-delete is set and reply to the sender.

### **Forwarding Messages**

 For S! Mail, a forwarding message has Fw: automatically inserted into the front of the subject.

Main Messaging ► Message Box Received

**1** Select a folder→ • Open a message→ (Menu)

**2** Select *Divert*→

#### Tip

- When you forward a message with an attached file, the attached file is forwarded, too.
- When you forward a decorated message, the decorations will be forwarded, too.

### Making a Call to the Sender of the Message

The call can be made when the sender's address is a phone number.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

**1** Select a folder→ • Open a message → [v] (Menu)

**2** Select Call Sender  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

### **Checking Delivery Report**

Confirm the delivery status of messages by delivery report sent from the Server Mail Box when Delivery Check (page 17-22) is set to  $\boldsymbol{Ask}$ . View the delivery report from Information Prompt (page 1-8), too.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

**1** Select *Sent*→Select a folder→

2 Select a message with the delivery confirmation icon ( ■)→ ■

### **Linked Information**

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website from a linked phone number, email address, or URL within a received message.

• The available linked information is displayed in blue characters.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→ 
   → Select message including information
- **2** Select the information→•

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select *Voice Call*→ ■ → ✓

Making a Video Call to the Selected Phone Number Select *Voice Call* → □ → □ (Menu) → *Video Call* → □

Making a Circle Talk Call to the Selected Phone Number Select Voice Call→ ● → ▼ (Menu)→Circle Talk→ ●

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email Address

Select  $Save\ Sender 
ightarrow igotimes 
ightarrow Add\ New/Add 
ightarrow igotimes 
ightarrow Add\ a\ Phone Book\ entry$ 

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.

Starting the Navi Application from Location Information
Select Navi Appli — — — Launch — —

Registering Selected Location Information to the My Locations

Select *To Locations*→

Connecting to the Selected URL

Select *Connect*→

**Phone Book** 

### **Saving Attached Files**

Save a file attached to received message in Data Folder.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

- **1** Select a folder → Open a message that has an attached file
- 2 Select an attached file → → Save → ■

  To display/play the attached file, select View or Play.
- 3 Enter a file name→ → Phone Memory|Memory Card→ ■

#### Note

- Some files may not be saved depending on the file type.
- Some data may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.
- When a received message has more than 20 attached files, all the files after the 20th file are not displayed/played.

### **Editing/Sending the Unsent Messages**

Main Messaging ► Unsent

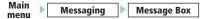
- **1** Select a message → → Select an item → ■
- **2** Edit the item→
- **3** Press  $\square$  (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \square$

#### Tip

- The only type of message that you can edit is a message that you have failed to send.
- From the Unsent folder, press 😿 (Menu) to perform the following: \*\*Delete/Send Multi/Display/Call Address/Save Sender\*\*

### **Protecting/Unprotecting Messages**

Protect messages against accidental deletion or Auto-delete (page 17-14).



**1** Select *Received|Sent*→Select a folder→

#### **Protecting/Unprotecting One Message**

Select a message  $\rightarrow v$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Protect \rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow One \rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow Protect/Deactivate <math>\rightarrow v$ 

### **Protecting/Unprotecting Multiple Messages**

Press ▼ (Menu)→Protect→ ■→Select Multi→ ■→Protect/

Deactivate→ ■→Select messages→ ■→ □ (OK)

### **Protecting/Unprotecting All Messages in the Folder**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Protect $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ All $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Protect/Deactivate  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (twice)

### **Deleting Messages**

Main Messaging Message Box

**Deleting One Message** 

**Deleting Multiple Messages** 

Select a folder  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$   $Select Multi <math>\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select messages  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

**Deleting All Messages in a Folder** 

Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Delete*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *All in Folder*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  *YES*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Deleting All Messages in the Received/Sent Message Box Press v (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$ n $\rightarrow$ All $\rightarrow$ n $\rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$ n

### **Received/Sent Messages Operations**

Main Messaging Message Box

**Changing the Order that Messages Appear** 

Select a folder  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  (Menu)  $\longrightarrow$  Sort by  $\longrightarrow$  Select the sort criteria  $\longrightarrow$ 

Displaying Messages According to the Specified Criteria

Select a folder  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  (Menu)  $\longrightarrow$  Filter  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  Select the criteria  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

 $\label{eq:making a Call to the Sender/Receiver of a Message } \mathbf{Making \ a \ Call \ to \ the \ Sender/Receiver of a \ Message }$ 

Select a folder  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a message  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Call Sender Call Address*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\nearrow$ 

Adding a New Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select a folder  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select a message  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Save Sender  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Add New  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter items  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (OK)

Adding a Phone Number/Email Address to a Phone Book Entry

Select a folder  $\longrightarrow$  Select a message  $\longrightarrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Save Sender  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  Add  $\longrightarrow$  Select a Phone Book entry  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  (OK)

#### Switching between Unread and Read

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

**1** Select a folder→

### **Changing One Message**

Select a message  $\rightarrow v$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Unread/Read \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow To\ Unread/To\ Read \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**Changing Multiple Messages at Once** 

 $Unread/To Read \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select messages \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \bowtie (Change)$ 

**Changing All Messages in the Folder** 

Press  $\[ \] \] (Menu) \rightarrow Unread/Read \rightarrow \[ \] \rightarrow All \rightarrow \[ \] \] \rightarrow To \ Unread/Read \rightarrow \[ \] \] \rightarrow Change \rightarrow \[ \] \]$ 

### **Moving Messages**

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box

**1** Select *Received|Sent*→Select a folder→

### **Moving One Message**

Select a message  $\rightarrow v$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Move \ Folder \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow One \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### **Moving Multiple Messages at Once**

Press ▼ (Menu)→*Move Folder*→ ■ →*Select Multi*→ ■ →
Select messages → ■ → (Move)→Select a folder → ■

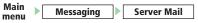
#### Moving All Messages in the Folder

# **Server Mail Operations**

### Using the Mail List

If an incoming message meets any of the following criteria, the message is stored on the Server Mail Box temporarily.

- When the other party's handset is turned off or out of the service area
- When an S! Mail exceeds 284 characters (284 bytes)
- When a file is attached
- When multiple addresses are specified
- When the subject contains 41 or more single-byte characters
- When the sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters



### Retrieving and Updating the Mail List

Press  $\square$  (Update) $\rightarrow$  *Update* $\rightarrow$   $\square$ 

### **Retrieving Messages**

Select a message  $\rightarrow v$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Retrieve \rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow One/Select$ Multi/All  $\rightarrow v$ 

#### **Retrieving Multiple Messages at Once**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Retrieve $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select messages  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Get)

#### Tip

 Retrieved messages are deleted from the Mail List and saved to Received.

17

### **Forwarding Server Messages**

Forward messages stored on the Server Mail Box to other handsets, PCs, etc.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Server Mail

**1** Select a message  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Divert*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select  $Keep|Do not Keep \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a recipient$ 

 When Do not Keep is selected, the forwarded message is deleted from the Server Mail Box.

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.

**3** Press **□** (Divert)

### **Deleting Server Messages**

Delete messages stored on the Server Mail Box.

### **Deleting One Message**

Main menu Messaging Server Mail

Deleting a Message Stored on the Server Mail Box Select Server Mail  $\longrightarrow YES \longrightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Deleting an S! Mail Notification and Message Stored on the Server Mail Box

Select *Notif./Server*  $\longrightarrow$  *YES*  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### **Deleting Multiple Messages**

Main Messaging Server Mail

Press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \square$ 

Deleting Multiple Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box Select  $Server\ Mail$ 

Deleting Multiple S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box Select Notif./Server→ ■

Colort massacra

**2** Select messages → •

#### **Deleting All Messages**

Main menu Messaging Server Mail

**1** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ All Read Mail|All  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Deleting All Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box Select Server Mail

Deleting All S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box \_\_

Select *Notif./Server*→

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ *YES* $\rightarrow$ 

### **Checking the Server Mail Box Status**

Check the usage rate of the Server Mail Box.

Main Messaging Server Mail menu

Press [Y] (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Mailbox Vol. $\rightarrow$ 

● To update the amount of Server Mail Box space, press 🖾 (Update).

### Note

 If the Server Mail Box usage exceeds 80%, a warning window will appear. Retrieve messages stored on the Server Mail Box (page 17-19) or delete them (page 17-20).

# **Message Settings**

### **Display Settings**

Main Messaging Settings Display

Selecting a Message Font Size Select **Font Size**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the font size  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Select the Scroll Unit of the Message Display Window Select **Scrolling**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Select the scroll unit  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Setting the Sender/Subject View for When You Receive a Message

Select **Show Address**  $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$ Select a viewing mode →

### **Creating Settings**

#### Creating the Simple Input List

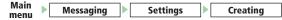
Main Messaging Settings Creating menu

Select Simple Input  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select an unregistered list→ ( ■ ) → Enter a recipient

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.

#### **Setting Groups**

Send a message to multiple addresses by using the Group list.



Select Category→

#### **Editing a Group Name**

Select a group  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Rename \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow Enter a group name$  $\rightarrow$ [ $\blacksquare$ ]

Select a group  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow \square$  (Add)  $\rightarrow$  Enter a recipient

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.

#### Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Select a recipient  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow To/Cc/Bcc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow To/Cc/Bcc$  $\rightarrow$ 

17

#### Saving/Inserting a Signature

Main menu Messaging Settings Creating

- **1** Select *Signature*→
- 2 Select Signature 1/Signature 2→ → Enter a signature → •

Signature is saved and the feature is set.

### **Canceling Signature**

Select *No Signature*→

#### **Editing Signature**

Select  $Signature\ 1/Signature\ 2 \rightarrow \boxed{v}\ (Menu) \rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} \rightarrow Edit$  signature  $\rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ 

### Setting the Default Mail Type

Set the type of an outgoing message (SMS/S! Mail) when you create a new message. The mail type can be changed when you create a message, too (pages 17-8, 17-10).

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Creating

**Select** Default  $Type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow SMS/S!$   $Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc$ **Setting** the Notification When the Mail Type is Switched Select Notify  $Type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

### **Send Settings**

Main Messaging ► Settings ► Sending

#### **Setting the Transmission Confirmation Window**

Select  $Confirmation \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Setting the Vibrator When Transmission is Confirmed Select  $Vibration \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients

Select  $DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \bigcirc Ask/Do \ not \ Ask \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select  $Expiry \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow SMS/S! \ Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select the expiry time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

### **Setting the Message Priority Level**

Select **Priority**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the priority  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the Service Center to Recipients

Select *Delivery Time*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select the delivery time  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

#### **Save a Reply Address**

Select  $Reply to \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{Enter an address}$ 

● For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.

#### **Editing the SMS Center Number**

Select *Message Ctr* $\rightarrow$  (three times) $\rightarrow$ Input SMS center number $\rightarrow$ 

#### Note

- SMS may become unavailable after changing the SMS Center Number.
- Once SMS Center Number is changed, reset settings (page 13-7) will not restore default number.

### **Receive Settings**

#### Retrieve Mode (S! Mail)

Set method for retrieving messages from the Server Mail Box.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

- **1** Select *Retrieve Mode*→
- **2** Select *All|Phone # Only|Deferred*→

  ■

### **Setting the Automatic Extraction of Attached Files**

Set whether to automatically display/play picture and sound files attached to messages.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

**1** Select *Auto-extract*→

Setting the Automatic Display of Picture Files Select  $Picture \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \blacksquare$ Setting the Automatic Display of Sound Files Select  $Sound \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Unmute/Mute \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Setting Spam Filter**

Sort messages from telephone numbers or email addresses that are not saved in Phone Book to a specific folder.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

- Select Anti-Spam→ ■→Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select Sort Messages → → Sort/Do not Sort → ■
- **3** Select *Select Folder*→ → Select a folder → ■

### Setting 3D Pictogram Display

3D Pictogram Display is a 3D animation display function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in text. Set the display conditions, background color and display speed.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► 3D Pictograms

Setting the Conditions for Displaying Received Messages with a 3D Pictogram Display

Select *Auto Play*  $\rightarrow$  Select the condition  $\rightarrow$ 

Setting the Font and Background Colors for a 3D Pictogram Display

Select *Colors*→ Select a color→

#### Note

- 3D Pictogram Display cannot display SMS messages with no body text and S! Mail notifications.
- Background playback of a music file may be paused if you use 3D Pictogram Display.

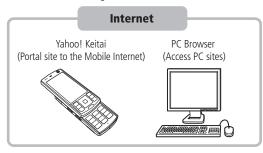
#### Tip

- You can display up to 150 characters regardless of whether the characters are single byte or double byte. "..." indicates after the maximum number of characters has been exceeded.
- You can use 🕞 to change the display speed of 3D Pictogram Display while it is displayed/paused.

# **Getting Started**

### **About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website**

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Also browse the Internet using PC Browser. In this manual, the Internet is used as a general term and the mobile portal site is referred to as Yahoo! Keitai. Websites accessed using PC Browser is referred to as a PC Website.



#### ■Using Yahoo! Keitai (page 18-3)

- Browse Mobile Internet sites
- Download images, music, etc.
- Stream movie/music files
- Register to Live Monitor

### ■Using PC Browser (page 18-4)

Browse Web pages designed for PCs

#### Note

 In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high connection charges.

### **Viewing Pages Stored in Cache Memory**

Cache Memory temporarily stores websites you have retrieved.

When cache memory becomes full, the oldest information saved in the cache will be deleted automatically.

- Previous viewed pages may load from Cache Memory. To view the latest data, update the information (page 18-7).
- For details on storage capacity, see "Storage Capacity" on page 24-17.

#### Tip

- You can delete information that is temporarily saved in the cache (page 18-13).
- Some information cannot be saved in the cache.
- Information saved in the cache is not deleted when you disconnect from the Internet or turn off your handset.

#### SSL / TLS

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) are a communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates (page 18-10).

#### Caution about the Use of SSL/TLS

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.

SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Betrusted Japan, Entrust Japan, GeoTrust Japan, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

# **Viewing and Using Websites**

#### **Scrolling Pages**

When the whole page is not displayed on the browser screen, the scroll bar appears on the right or bottom of the screen. View the remaining part using  $\bigcirc$  or  $\bigcirc$  to scroll the screen.

#### **Moving Cursor**

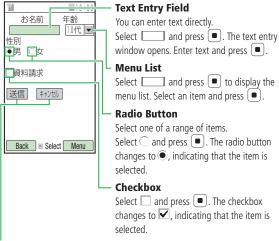
When there are items on the screen that can be selected, move the cursor to the next item by pressing  $\bigcirc$  and to the previous item by pressing  $\bigcirc$ .

#### Going to the Next Page/Returning to the Previous Page

Websites you have retrieved are temporarily stored. Press  $\blacksquare$  (Back) to return to the previous page. If you press  $\boxdot$  (Menu) and select **Forward**, it takes you to the next page.

#### **Text Entry & Item Selection**

When there are entry fields and selectable items on the screen, operate as follows.



#### **Command Button**

Select operations such as sending or canceling what you put in the entry fields. Select and press to execute the indicated command.

#### Note

• One on the left is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

# **Accessing Yahoo! Keitai**

Access Yahoo! Keitai to search for information. Also connect to a Website by entering an address (URL) like "http://www.△△.ne.jp" directly.

◆ The "₽" indicator appears during communication. To disconnect, press
 ✓ (Cancel).



### Accessing from the Yahoo! Web Menu

Select **Yahoo! Keitai**→

# Accessing a Web Page by Directly Entering the Address Select $Enter\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Direct\ Entry \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter\ a\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Select *Enter URL* $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Di$ (twice)

#### **Accessing a Web Page from URL History**

Select  $Enter\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow URL\ History \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ a\ URL$  history  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

### **Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages**

In History, up to the 20 most recently accessed URLs are saved. You can select a URL from History and access the same website again.

Select *History* Select a history

- Alternatively, you can press 🖙 in Standby to access Yahoo! Keitai.
- While a URL history is selected, press (Menu) and select *Delete* to delete the URL history.

# **Accessing PC Websites**

View websites designed for PCs with the PC Browser.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *PC Browser*→ ■

● You can also access the PC Browser menu by pressing (■).

Accessing the Home Page

Select *Homepage*→

Accessing Bookmarked Web Pages Select *Bookmarks* (page 18-5)→ ■

Accessing a Web Page by Directly Entering the Address
Select Enter URL→ → Direct Entry → ■ → Enter a URL→ ■
(twice)

Accessing a Web Page from URL History

Select *Enter URL*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *URL History*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Select a URL history  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages
Select *History*→ ■ → Select a history→ ■

**2** Select Always Ask|Ask Once Only→

■

 If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

#### Note

 Some websites may not be displayed correctly or it may take time to open the site depending on the site.

# **Saved Pages**

If you save frequently accessed information to Saved Pages, the information can be called up without accessing the Internet later.

### Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages

**1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Saved Pages  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

2 Select Save→ ■ → Enter a title → ■

#### Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- If you save a page with the same URL as a page already saved in Saved Pages, it is saved as a different page.

#### Tip

 URLs and attached data which include linked information are saved in Saved Pages.

Internet

### **Displaying Saved Pages**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select Saved Pages→
■

Displaying Saved Pages of PC Websites Select  $PC\ Browser \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow Saved\ Pages \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Select the title of the page→

### **Bookmarks**

If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

### **Adding a Bookmark**

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select Save→
  - If you don't edit a title or URL, press 🖾 (OK).
- 3 Select the title field → → Edit the title → → (OK)
  - Select a folder when adding to the folder.

### **Using Bookmarks**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

Select  $Bookmarks \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**Using Bookmarks for PC Websites**Select *PC Browser*→ → *Bookmarks* → ●

**2** Select the title of the page→

■

After communication with the Service Center, information is displayed.

Tip

You can call up information from Bookmarks while viewing a page.
 Display a page → ▼ (Menu) → Bookmarks → ■ → View List

### **Editing Bookmarks**

Create folders to organize bookmarks, change bookmark titles or folder names, or delete them.

#### **Creating a Folder**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

Select  $Bookmarks \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Creating a Folder for a PC Website
Select PC Browser→ ■ → Bookmarks → ■

**2** Press **w** (Menu)→*Create Folder*→ **•** 

#### **Editing a Bookmark Title**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *Bookmarks*→

Editing a Bookmark Title of PC Website
Select PC Browser→ □ → Bookmarks → □

**2** Select the title of the page→ [y] (Menu)

**3** Select  $Edit \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a title \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

4 Edit the title→ ■ → 🖾 (OK)

● To rename a folder, select a folder you want to rename from the Bookmarks list, press ☑ (Menu) and select *Rename Folder*.

### Moving a Bookmark to Another Folder

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *Bookmarks*  $\rightarrow$  **•** 

Moving a Bookmark of a PC Website

Select PC  $Browser \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**Moving One Bookmark** 

**Moving Multiple Bookmarks** 

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Move* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Select Multi* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a bookmark $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Move)

#### **Moving All Bookmarks**

Press  $\boxed{\mathbf{v}}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Move \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} \rightarrow All \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ 

**2** Select a folder→

### Sending a URL in an SMS or S! Mail Message

Main Wahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *Bookmarks*→

Sending the URL of a PC Website
Select  $PC\ Browser \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

2 Select the title of the page→¬¬ (Menu)→Send URL|As Mail→¬

#### **Deleting Bookmarks**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *Bookmarks*→

#### **Deleting Bookmarks of PC Websites**

Select  $PC Browser \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

#### **Deleting One Bookmark**

Select a bookmark  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $One \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### **Deleting Multiple Bookmarks**

Press  $\[ \] \$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \] \rightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \] \rightarrow Select a bookmark<math>\rightarrow \] \] \rightarrow \[ \] \] \$  (Delete) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \[ \] \]$ 

#### **Deleting All Bookmarks**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Delete* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$  *YES* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Tip

 To delete a folder, select a folder you want to delete from the Bookmarks list and select v (Menu) → Delete Folder.

# **Setting Browser Security**

If you set browser security, your security code (page 1-22) needs to be entered to display Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History.

Main Main Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *Bookmarks\Saved Pages\Enter URL\History→*∑ (Menu)

Setting Browser Security for a Bookmark Folder
Select Bookmarks → □ → Select a folder → □ (Menu)

Setting Browser Security for PC Websites
Select PC Browser → □ → Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Enter

URL/History → □ (Menu)

- 2 Select Security Lock→ →Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select  $Lock|Unlock \rightarrow \blacksquare$

# **Operations for Web Pages**

### Entering a URL Directly to Access a Website

While displaying pages, connect to a homepage by entering an address (URL) like "http://www. \alpha \c.o.jp " directly.

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Enter\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - To access a website from access history, select *URL History* (pages 18-3, 18-4).
- **2** Select *Direct Entry*  $\rightarrow$  **Enter a URL**  $\rightarrow$  **(twice)**

### Switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Websites

- **1** Display a page→ [w] (Menu)→Change View→ □ → Current Page|Linked Page→ □
- **2** Select Always AsklAsk Once Only→
  - If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

## **Updating the Information**

Update the displayed page.

**1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Reload\ Page \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

### **Using Linked Information**

Use linked phone numbers, email addresses or URLs to make calls, create messages or access websites. Also add phone numbers and email addresses to Phone Book.

 Available only when the phone number, email address or URL is underlined.

**1** Display a page

Making a Call/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $Call/To\ Phone\ Book <math>\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Sending Message/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked email address → ■ → As Mail/To Phone Book → ■

**Accessing a Website** 

Select a linked URL→

■

### **Copying Text from a Page**

Copy text from a page to the clipboard.

**1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Text\ Copy \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range→ → Specify a range of text to copy

Only characters and pictographs can be copied.

### **Useful Features While Viewing a Page**

Searching for a Particular Character String on a Page

**2** Select  $Search \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter text to search for \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**3** Select the search method  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow Up|Down$  or ONI  $OFF \rightarrow \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \boxtimes$  (Search)

Jumping to the Top or End of Web Page

**1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**2** Select *To Top/To End*→

Sending URLs via SMS/S! Mail

Display the Create Message window with the URL pasted to the text.

#### Saving a Page to Event

Save a displayed page to events in the Calendar. A saved page is stored in Saved Pages.

- 1 Display a page  $\rightarrow \text{$^{\nabla}$}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select *To Event*→ → Register the event (page 14-14)

#### Saving a Page to My Locations

When a page with location information is displayed, the information can be saved to My Locations.

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbf{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select *To Locations*→

#### Viewing Properties of the Web Page

Check a title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer or URL of the page.

- **2** Select *Page Details* → •

#### Displaying a Selected Frame in the Whole Screen

In a page that is designed for PCs and has multiple frames, a frame can be selected and maximize it to fit the whole screen.

- **1** Display a page→Select a frame
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Tool* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Frame In* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

Returning to the All-Frames Screen

Press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow [v]$   $\rightarrow Frame Out \rightarrow [v]$ 

#### Operating Flash® Playback

- **2** Select Flash(R) Menu $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Play$  from Top/Play  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

### **Enlarging/Reducing a Page**

- 2 Select Magnification/Shrinkage Percentage→

Switch Display view between reduced view and standard view.

**1** Display a page of a PC Website→¬¬ (Menu)

**2** Select PC Screen|Small Screen→

### **Changing the Direction**

You can switch the direction to be displayed on a PC Website between horizontal and vertical.

1 Display a page of PC Website→¬¬ (Menu)→Tool

**2** Select LandscapelPortrait→

■

### **Checking Server Certificates**

While viewing a page that supports SSL/TLS connections, the applied certificate can be viewed.

For details on SSL/TLS, see page 18-2.

Display a page which is protected by SSL/TLS→

(Menu)→Tool→ → Details→

(Menu)→Tool→ → Details→

**2** Select Session Info.→

## **Using Files in Web Pages**

Perform various operations such as saving and displaying/playing picture and melody files in Web pages.

#### Saving the File to Data Folder

**1** Display a page that has a file→ w (Menu)

**2** Select *Saving Mode*→ ● → Select a file → ●

Saving a Pictograph File to My Pictograms in Data Folder on the handset

Select Save My Pict.  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Phone MemorylMemory Card  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Note

• Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

### **Viewing File Properties**

**1** Display a page that has a file→¬¬ (Menu)

**2** Select Saving  $Mode \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**3** Select *File Details*→

18

Internet

#### Playing or Displaying the File Data

- Display a page that has a file→ [y] (Menu)
- Select Saving  $Mode \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$
- Select *Play/View*→

• Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

#### **Downloading Files from Links**

- Open page
- Select a link→

Downloading begins.

Playing or Displaying the File

Select *Play/View*→[•]

Saving the File to Data Folder

Select *Save*→

**Viewing File Properties** 

Select File Details→

Saving and Setting the File as a Wallpaper

Select **Settings**  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (twice)

Saving and Setting the File as a Ringtone

Select Save & Set  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Ring\ Song \cdot Tone/Music \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Voice$ Call/Video Call/Message/DeliveryCheck/Missed Call/Circle *Talk/Hot Status*→ (twice)

#### Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

#### Tip

- For details on streaming, see page 8-8.
- When you save a file and set it as a wallpaper, some files can be cut or resized by pressing (Cut) or (Resize) respectively after they are displayed.

### **Changing the Font Size of Text in Information**

**1** Select Font Size  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the font size  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

### **Setting the Scroll Unit of Pages**

Main 

Yahoo! Keitai 

Settings

**1** Select  $Scrolling \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  the scroll unit  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Tip

### **Changing the Text Encoding Type**

When text is not correctly shown in the page, change the text encoding type to show them again.

**1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Select  $Encoding\ Type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select\ the\ text$  encoding type  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## **Adjusting the Sound Volume**

1 Display a page→¬¬¬ (Menu)→Settings→¬¬ → Sound Volume→¬¬¬

2 Adjust the sound volume→ ■

### Refusing the Reception of Images or Melodies (Text Browse)

Set your handset to receive only text information from the Internet which will shorten the amount of time to complete a transmission.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings

**1** Select *Downloads*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

Refusing the Reception of Images

Select Images → ■ → Do not Download → ■

Refusing the Reception of Melodies

Select Sounds → ■ → Do not Download → ■

18

Interne:

### Setting a Warning Window When Changing Browsers

Set whether or not a warning window appears when you change between PC Browser and Yahoo! Keitai.

Main menu 

Yahoo! Keitai 

PC Browser 

Settings

- **1** Select Warning→ → PC Browser/Yahoo! Keitai → •
- **2** Select *ShowlHide*→

### **Memory Management**

### **Clearing All Cache Memory**

Clear the temporarily saved information in Cache memory.

Main menu 

Yahoo! Keitai 

Settings 

Memory Mgr.

**1** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ Clear Cache  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### **Clearing All Cookie Information**

Main menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Settings ▶ Memory Mgr.

**1** Enter your security code (page 1-22)→*Clear Cookie*→ → *YES*→ ■

#### Clearing the User Information for Authentication

Main menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Settings ▶ Memory Mgr.

**1** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$ Clear Auth... $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

### **Security Settings**

### **Manufacture Number Setting**

Set whether to automatically send the International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) of your handset as your User ID when a request is received from the network

- Select *Manufacture #→* ■
- **2** Select SendlDo not Send→

  ■

Internet

#### **Referer Setting**

Specify whether the link source page (referrer page) should be sent when you move from one website to the next. When *Send* is selected for Send Referrer, the referrer page sent from the browser will be inspected, and requests from invalid pages will be denied.

Main menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Settings ▶ Security

**Select** Send Referer  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  SendlDo not Send $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### **Enabling/Disabling the Storing of Cookies**

Cookies are the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and other information. The information is sent from the server, saved temporarily in your handset and used for contents service. If Cookie is set to *Enable*, the information such as the date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site.

Main menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Settings ► Security

**1** Select *Cookie*→

**2** Select *EnablelDisablelAlways Ask*→

■

#### **Script Setting**

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when showing a Web page with which script (program) has been set.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings Security

**1** Select Script→ ■ → Ask OncelEnablelDisablel Always Ask→ ■

### **Confirming the Root Certificates**

Confirm details on a certificate issued from a certificate authority.

• For details on SSL/TLS, see page 18-2.

Main menu 

Yahoo! Keitai 

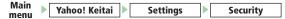
Settings 

Security

Select *Root Certif.*→■→Select the root certificate
→■

#### **Authentication Setting**

Specify whether user name/password authentication information should be retained when authentication is performed on a website.



#### **Setting SSL Communication**

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when sending out encoded data by SSL communication.

Main menu

Settings

Select Session Info. 
$$\rightarrow \bigcirc$$
  $\rightarrow$  Show|Hide $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

### Specifying the Destination to Save Downloaded Contents

Specify the destination to save contents such as music files when you download them from Web pages.

Main menu

Settinas





**Settings**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **Storage** on the page.

### **Initializing Your Browser**

Return data, such as browser setting, Bookmarks, Saved Pages, access history, authentication information, cookie and cache, to the default settings.

Main menu

**Settings** 

- Select *Browser Reset*  $\rightarrow$  [ $\bullet$ ]  $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- Select  $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

### Resetting Various Settings of the Browser

Return the browser's various settings to the default settings.

Main menu

- Select Reset Setting  $\rightarrow$  [ $\bullet$ ]  $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- Select  $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

### **Registering New Information to be Displayed**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Live Monitor

**1** Select List/S! Loop List  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select Contents List/S! Loop  $\rightarrow \forall YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**3** Select contents→

• Follow the onscreen instructions to register contents.

#### Note

 Live Monitor flash news and S! Loop list are not automatically updated from late at night until early in the morning.

#### Tip

#### Update/Delete

 The items registered in S! Loop will be shown in the S! Loop list. For details, see the S! Loop Help.

### **Resetting the Registered List**

Delete all registered Live Monitor lists and S! Loop list (left).

Main 
M

- Select Clear List→ →Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select *YES*→

# **Getting Started**

Download an S! Appli from Web pages providing S! Appli on the Internet. Downloading uses the same amount of communication charges as when you use the Internet

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).
- You can download and use only S! Appli that are specially designed for SoftBank handsets.

### About S! Appli

#### ■Downloading S! Appli (page 19-2)

S! Appli such as games and 3D images downloaded from the Internet will be stored in the S! Appli Library.

### ■Network S! Appli (right)

You can enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network.

### ■ Setting Screensaver (page 19-5)

Set an S! Appli as a Screensaver.

#### About Network S! Appli

There are S! Appli which operate only on the handset at the time of use, and S! Appli (Network S! Appli) which need to connect to the network (Internet). Enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network for Network S! Appli.

- When you use a Network S! Appli, a communication fee is charged each time the application connects to a network.
- When Security is set to Session (page 19-4) for network access, alert is displayed only once each time the S! Appli is activated.

- 1 Select More S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Select an S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  Download  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→

  ■

Downloading begins.

 A confirmation window is displayed when the download is completed.

#### Note

- If the battery level is low, the application may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace the USIM card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

#### Tip

- If the memory of the destination to save the file is full or if the number of items to save is exceeded:
  - If the destination is your handset, a confirmation window is displayed. Select YES and then delete unnecessary data.
  - If the destination is a memory card, you cannot download S! Appli.
     Delete unnecessary files of S! Appli (page 19-3) or save them on the handset.

# **Starting S! Appli**

Main S! Appli Library

**1** Select an S! Appli→

#### Tip

- Operations when there is a call or message coming in while you are running S! Appli, it will follow the priority settings for incoming calls and messages (page 19-5).
- Mini Tool (page 1-21) may not appear depending on the S! Appli display size.

# Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli

Suspending/Resuming/Ending

- 1 While an S! Appli is running, press 💳
- **2** Select *PauselResumelEnd*→ •

Resuming/Ending S! Appli Suspended

Main 
S! Appli 
Library

**Select** *Resume*|*Exit*→■

# **S! Appli Library**

### **Deleting S! Appli**

#### **Deleting One Application**

Select an application 
$$\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$$
 (Menu)  $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

### **Deleting Multiple Applications**

Press 
$$\bigcirc$$
 (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select applications  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Delete) $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **Deleting All Applications**

Press 
$$\bigcirc$$
 (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **All**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Note

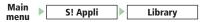
 If you delete a preinstalled S! Appli, Reset All (page 13-7) will not restore the deleted application.

#### Tip

 There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be deleted. This depends on the type of the preinstalled S! Appli.

### Switching the S! Appli Library Display

Change the S! Appli Library display from the handset (Data Folder) library to the memory card library. The " " " indicator appears while the memory card library is displayed.



- **1** Press **□** ( **□** )
  - To change from the memory card to the handset, press 🖾 ( 🗐 ).

### **Viewing S! Appli Properties**



Select an S! Appli $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Details $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

#### Tip

 You can confirm such specific data as names, vendors, and versions of applications in properties. The items to be confirmed vary according to the S! Appli. Move an S! Appli to the S! Appli Library on the handset (Data Folder) or to the S! Appli Library on the memory card.

Main menu S! Appli Library

#### **Moving One Application**

Select an application  $\rightarrow v$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Move \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow One \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow VES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**Moving Multiple Applications** 

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Move $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select applications $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Move) $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**Moving All Applications** 

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Move  $\longrightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  All  $\longrightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### Note

- Standby settings will be canceled if the S! Appli set as Screensaver is moved to the memory card.
- There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved anywhere
  according to the type of the preinstalled S! Appli. There are also some
  cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved to the memory card according
  to the type of the downloaded S! Appli.
- If there is the same S! Appli on the handset or on the memory card, the S! Appli will be overwritten.

### **Security Settings**

Set your handset to alert you before making calls or network connection, etc., while an S! Appli is running.

- **1** Select an S! Appli $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Security $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select an item→

Permit All Functions and Do Not Display Alert Select Blanket→ ■

**Display Alert Each Time You Access a Function**Select *Oneshot*→
■

**Display Alert Each Time an S! Appli is Activated** Select *Session*→

Do Not Execute Any Function and Do Not Display Alert Select  $N_O \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### Tip

• The type of display methods varies according to the function.

19

# **S! Appli Settings**

### **Setting the Screensaver**

Set an S! Appli for Standby. Also set the starting time of the S! Appli set as the Screensaver.

Main menu S! Appli Settings

**1** Select *Screensaver*→

Setting an S! Appli as Screensaver

Select  $Screensavers \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  an application  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

Setting the S! Appli Start Time

Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Start\ Time \rightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow Enter\ a\ start\ time \rightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow (M$ 

#### Note

- Even if there is an incoming call, Answering Machine (page 14-7) will
  not start operating when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver or when
  the Voice Call of Calls&Alarms (right) is set as Continue Apps.
- According to the type of application, there are some cases when a Screensaver application may pause if the time specified for power saving (page 12-9) is over.

#### Tip

- If you press when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver, the S! Appli set as the Screensaver will pause, but its Standby setting will not be canceled. If you want to cancel the S! Appli set as the Screensaver, select OFF at Screensaver.
- You can also set the Standby settings if you select an S! Appli available as Screensaver in the S! Appli Library (page 19-3).

### Setting Priority While Running an S! Appli

Set whether to pause the S! Appli to put a priority on an incoming call or to have a notification only without interrupting the S! Appli, when you receive a call, etc. while operating the S! Appli.

Main menu S! Appli ► Settings

**1** Select *Calls&Alarms* → ■

Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Voice Call Select Voice Call Pause Apps/Continue Apps Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Video Call Select Video Call Pause Apps/Continue Apps Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Message

Select Message 
ightharpoonup Pause Apps/Continue Apps 
ightharpoonup Setting the Priority for When the Alarm Plays Select <math>Alarm 
ightharpoonup Pause Apps/Continue Apps 
ightharpoonup

**1** Select *Volume*→

**2** Adjust the volume→

Tip

 If you have set the manner mode as Original Mode (page 12-1), the sound volume will follow the S! Appli volume set at the Original Mode.

### **Backlight Settings**

Main menu S! Appli Settings

**1** Select  $Backlight \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

**Setting the Backlight to Display** 

Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Always \ ON/Always \ OFF/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Setting the Backlight to Blink

Select  $Blink \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

 If you select Same as Phone, your handset will follow the backlight settings (page 12-9). **S! Appli Vibration** 

Main S! Appli Settings

**1** Select *Vibration*→

2 Select *ON/OFF*→

# Updating the Information of an S! Appli on the Memory Card

You need to update the information of S! Appli on the memory card after you have used it (editing, adding, or deleting data) on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

Main menu S! Appli

**1** Select Card Sync $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

 There are some cases when it takes a certain amount of time to complete updates according to the numbers and sizes of the S! Appli.

19

# **Confirming the License Information of an S! Appli**

Main menu S! Appli

**1** Select *Information*→

# **Confirming the Route Certificate of an S! Appli**

Main menu S! Appli

**1** Select *Certification* → Select the certification → ■

# **S! Town (Japanese Only)**

S! Town is an online communication application. S! Town is a 3D virtual space. Enjoy the S! Town virtual space e.g. when chatting or shopping.

- •S! Appli for S! Town is required to use S! Town. S! Appli *S! Town* is preinstalled in the handset.
- Preinstalled S! Appli S! Town cannot be deleted.
- Packet transmission fees apply to use S! Town. The fees may be expensive.
- If you subscribe to Website access restrictions, you cannot use S! Town.

### **Using S! Town**

When you use S! Town for the first time, a user registration (free) and profile registration are required. Please read and agree to the terms of service before the registration.

See S! Appli S! Town Help for details about using S! Town.

Main Communications

# **1** Select S! $Town \rightarrow \blacksquare$

- ●You can view the S! Town registration status and cancel the service from Yahoo! Keitai. See S! Appli S! Town Help for details.
- Upgrade notification may appear when you start S! Town. Follow the onscreen instructions to upgrade S! Town.

### **Using the Library**

The library stores S! Appli that expand the functions of S! Town. Downloaded S! Appli are automatically stored in the library.

S! Appli are not preinstalled in the library.

Main menu Communications

# **1** Select $S! Town \rightarrow \square$ (Libr.)

● You can start S! Appli from the library. Depending on the types of S! Appli, S! Appli S! Town may start.

# S! Loop (Japanese Only)

Use S! Loop to keep a diary on the web or exchange information via BBS.

Main menu Communications

Select  $S! Loop \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

S! Loop top menu appears.

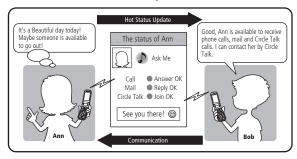
See S! Loop Help for operations.

### **Hot Status**

Share your current mood and availability to receive incoming calls, messages or Circle Talk calls with your Hot Status members.

It is necessary to obtain the person's consent before saving him/her to Hot Status Members List.

If you save your Hot Status members to the Members List of Active Window, their Hot Status information can be easily checked from Active Window.



#### Note

• If IP Service (page 13-6) is set to *OFF*, Hot Status is unavailable.

#### Tip

 Hot Status information is updated automatically. You can also update it manually (page 20-10).

#### Subscription

 To use Hot Status, subscription is required and a monthly subscription fee is applied.

### **About Hot Status Notifications**

When a Hot Status notification arrives, the ring tone sounds and a message appears.

There are five types of Hot Status notifications as shown below.

Туре	Description
Saving Completed	Your invitation has been accepted. Once an invitation is accepted, the accepted parties can view each other's Hot Status information.
Saving Failed	Your invitation was either rejected, the other party did not reply within 24 hours or his/her Members List already contained 30 people.
Deletion Request	The other party has deleted you from his/her Hot Status Members List. After receiving this notification, you and the person can no longer check each other's Hot Status information.
Saving Request	The other party has added you to his/her Hot Status Members List. After you accept the invitation, you and the person can check each other's Hot Status information.  When you receive a Saving Request, "" appears in Standby. The Saving Request is shown with "" in the Hot Status Notification List.

Туре	Description	
Notification	The network connection failed and Hot Status has automatically become <i>Offline</i> .	

#### **Checking Hot Status Notifications**

Hot Status notifications can be checked in the Hot Status Notification List.

# **1** When Information Prompt appears, select Notification → Select the Hot Status notification

 Select YES to display the Hot Status Members List after checking Saving Completed or Deletion Request notifications.

#### Tip

- Hot Status notifications are deleted from the Hot Status Notification List after you operate them.
- A message is displayed if you receive a Hot Status notification while operating in certain Hot Status windows. Select *Check Now* to display the Hot Status Notification List. To continue the current operation, select *Check Later*
- You can also display the Hot Status Notification List while the Hot Status Members List is displayed by pressing w (Menu) and selecting Notification.
- Press (Menu) while the Hot Status Notification List is displayed to perform the following:

Delete/Delete All

# Creating a Hot Status Members List

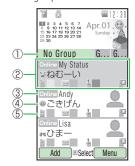
Save up to 30 people to your Hot Status Members List. Organize and manage entries by group. Save up to ten people per group or 30 people to  $\it No$   $\it Group$ .

#### Note

- You can only save people with Hot Status-enabled SoftBank handsets to the Hot Status Members List.
- To create a Hot Status Members List, set My Status to Online (page 20-7).

#### **Hot Status Members List Window**

The members saved to each group are shown in a list.



(1) Group tab

Switches the group to be displayed.

②My Status

Information about you. Always displayed on the top regardless of which group is displayed.

(3) Hot Status connection status

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

(4)Condition

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

(5) Availability

Indicates member status and availability by color.

■ Calls

Green: Available Yellow: Available for Emergencies

Red: Unavailable White: Unknown ■ Mail

Green: Available Yellow: Will Check Later

Red: Unavailable White: Unknown

Circle Talk

Green: Available/Auto Join Red: Unavailable

Tip

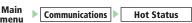
• Press 🔀 (Menu) while the Hot Status Members List is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):

Add Members/Delete/Call/Call CT/To Phone Book/Settings/ Active Window/Notification/Rename/Change Group

#### Saving Entries to Hot Status Members List

When you add a person to your Hot Status Members List, an invitation is sent.

• When the person accepts your invitation, a Saving Completed notification arrives (page 20-2) and that person is saved to Hot Status Members List where you can check the person's status.



- Press  $\square$  (Add) $\rightarrow$ Phone Book|Direct Input $\rightarrow$ 
  - If you select **Phone Book**, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- Select a person or enter a phone number →

#### To Select a Group

Select 

→ Select a group → 

■

**3** Press  $\square$  (Save) $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

A Saving Request notification is sent to the person, and *Waiting* is displayed in the Hot Status Members List.

#### Note

 A Saving Failed notification is sent when a person's Hot Status Members List already contains 30 people.

#### Tip

- If My Status is Offline, a message asking you to go Online is displayed when you start up Hot Status. Select YES to change to Online.
- If you have not saved any members when you start up Hot Status, a
  message asking you if you want to add members is displayed. Select
  YES to add a new member.
- After you have selected a member, press v (Menu) and select
   Change to select a different member.

# Saving an Entry to Hot Status Members List from a Saving Request

If you get an invitation to join a person's Hot Status Members List, you will receive a Saving Request notification (page 20-2). If you accept, the other person is saved to the Hot Status Members List and you and the person can check out each other's Hot Status information.

**1** When Information Prompt appears, select *Notification*→•

**2** Select the Saving Request notification  $\rightarrow VES$ 



 If you select NO, a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person and the person is not saved to the Hot Status Members List.

#### Note

- If you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, you cannot send the person an invitation to the Hot Status Members List for 24 hours.
- Although you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to
  the other person, if the other person does not receive the notification
  because he/she is outside the service area or offline for more than 24
  hours, you will receive another Saving Request notification when the
  person comes online.

#### Tip

 You can set your handset to reject Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book or you can set it to reject all Saving Requests (page 20-9).

#### **Editing Your Hot Status Information**

Open My Status window to edit your current mood or switch between online and offline.

#### **My Status Window**



- **①Hot Status connection status** 
  - Set the connection to your network.
- @Mood

Set your current feelings and condition.

**3** Answer status

Set your reception conditions for each of the various transmission methods.

**4** Comment

Enter a message to show to the other members.

#### **Changing My Status**

Change your Hot Status information (My Status).

Main menu Communications Hot Status

# Select My Status→ ■

● In Standby, press and hold ★ it to display My Status.

#### To Change Your Mood

Select the mood  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Select an item} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **To Change Your Answer Status**

Select the answer status to be changed→ 
Select an item→ 

Select an item→

#### **To Change All Your Answer Statuses**

Press  $\boxed{\mathbf{v}}$  (All) $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$  $\boxed{\bullet}$   $\rightarrow$ Confirm the settings $\rightarrow$  $\boxed{\bullet}$ 

To customize your status settings

# **2** Press ☐ (Update)

#### **Entering Comments**

Enter a message to display as Hot Status information.

Main menu ► Communications ► Hot Status

- **1** Select My Status→
  - In Standby, press and hold ★ it to display My Status.
- **2** Select the Comment field→

# **3** Enter a comment → • □ → □ (Update)

#### Switching between Online and Offline

If you switch to offline, you and other people cannot check each others' current condition. Also, you will not be able to create Hot Status Members List or talk to people with Circle Talk.

Main menu ► Communications ► Hot Status

- **1** Select My Status→
  - In Standby, press and hold 🕶 to display My Status.
- 2 Select Online / Offline → ■

To Switch to Online

Select  $Online \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

To Switch to Offline

Select *Offline* → ■ → □ (Update)

# **Editing Hot Status Members List**

# **Editing a Group Name**

- **1** Select a group with ••• → (Menu) → Rename → •
- **2** Edit a group name→

Tip

• You cannot change the name of *No Group*.

#### Changing a Group

Hot Status members can be moved to different groups.

Main menu Communications Hot Status

1 Select a group with 🕒

#### **To Change One Member**

Select a member  $\rightarrow \overline{y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Change Group*  $\rightarrow$  *One*  $\rightarrow$  Select a group  $\rightarrow$ 

#### **To Select Multiple Members to Change**

Select an entry other than My Status  $\multimap$  (Menu)  $\multimap$  Change Group  $\multimap$  Select Multi  $\multimap$  Select some members  $\multimap$   $\multimap$  (Move)  $\multimap$  Select a group  $\multimap$ 

#### **To Change All Members**

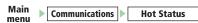
Select an entry other than My Status  $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Change Group*  $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$   $\rightarrow$  *All*  $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$   $\rightarrow$  Select a group  $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$ 

#### aiT

 If you move multiple or all members to a group so that the group exceeds ten members, the group will not be changed and the screen returns to the multiple members selection window. Reselect the members so that the group does not exceed ten members.

#### **Deleting a Member**

When you delete a member from your Hot Status Members List, a Deletion Request notification is sent to that person.



# 1 Use •• to select a group

#### To Delete One Member

Select a member  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$   $\rightarrow$   $One \rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$   $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$ 

#### To Select Multiple Members to Delete

Select an entry other than My Status  $\multimap$  (Menu)  $\multimap$  Delete  $\multimap$   $\multimap$  Select Multi  $\multimap$   $\multimap$  Select some members  $\multimap$   $\multimap$  (Delete)  $\multimap$  YES  $\multimap$   $\multimap$ 

#### To Delete All Members

Select an entry other than My Status  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **All**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Note

 After a member is deleted from the Hot Status Members List, you cannot send/receive a Saving Request notification to/from that person for 24 hours.

# **Checking Members' Hot Status Information**

In the Member Status window, check the current condition of members and call them, send them messages or talk to them with Circle Talk.

#### **Member Status Window**



#### **1)Member information**

Shows the name and image saved to Phone Book, Hot Status group and phone number.

#### **②Hot Status connection status**

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

#### ③Mood

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

#### **4** Answer status

Shows the reception conditions for various transmission methods in color.

#### (5)Comment

Shows a message from the member.

**1** Select a group with •• → Select a member with •• → ••

# 2 Contact the member according to their current status

#### To Make a Call

Select the answer status for Calls  $\rightarrow \square$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Voice Call/Video Call  $\rightarrow \square$ 

#### To Send a Message

Select the answer status for Mail→ □ → Create a message → □ (Send)

#### To Make a Circle Talk Call

Select the answer status for Circle Talk→

#### Tip

- When signal reception is poor, the latest Hot Status information may not be displayed. In this case, update the information manually (page 20-10).
- For a Hot Status member saved with a phone number, press v (Menu) in the Member Status window, select *Edit* and add the member to the Phone Book. The name and photo saved to Phone Book are displayed in the Hot Status Members List window and in the Member Status window.
- If you perform Reset All or Clear Memory (page 13-7), the names and images of members will no longer be displayed and they will all belong to No Group.
- Press (Menu) while the Member Status window is displayed to perform the following:

Edit/Change Group

#### Saving Entries to the Active Window Members List

Save members whose condition you often check to the Active Window Members List (page 14-1).

Main menu Communications Hot Status

- Select a group with ••• → Select a member with 💠
- **2** Press 𝔝 (Menu)→Active Window→ (twice)→
  Not Registered→ ■

Tip

You can also display My Status in Active Window.

# **Hot Status Settings**

# Setting How to Respond to Saving Requests

You can set in advance how to respond when you receive Saving Request notifications.

The response types are shown below.

Response type	Description
Always Answer	All Saving Requests are accepted.
Known Only	Only Saving Requests from people saved in Phone Book are accepted. A Saving Failed notification is sent to Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book.
Do not Answer	A Saving Failed notification is sent to all Saving Requests.

Main menu Communications Hot Status

1 Press  $\nabla$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Request Reply

**2** Select a response type→

■

#### **Editing Your Mood and Setting All Answer Statuses**

Edit the mood to be displayed in My Status. Also, your answer statuses can be set all at once.

The following items are set when you purchase your handset.

⊜ ごきげん (Good mood)	⊕ ハッピー (Happy)	ひまー (Free)
あそぼー (Let's have fun)		がっくり (Disappointed)
⊛ うえーん (Weeping)	図(Upset)	めらめら (Flaming)
注: だる―い (Lazy)	aむーい (Sleepy)	連絡して (Contact me)
♪ 誘って (Ask me)	₩ ひみつ (Secret)	? Optional (two)

Main Communications Hot Status

**1** Press v (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow v$   $\rightarrow$ Status Setting

**2** Select an item→ (Change)

To Set an Icon

Select  $Icon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Select an icon} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

To Set a Label

Select  $Label \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow Enter a label \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

To Set All Answer Statuses

Select  $Set All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Updating Hot Status Information Manually**

Hot Status Information is updated automatically, but you can also update it manually.

Main menu Communications Hot Status

# **Circle Talk Basics**

Circle Talk is a walkie-talkie style communication service. Talk one-on-one or with a group of people (up to ten people) using Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets. Press and hold 1 to talk (one person at a time) and release the key when finished talking. Check the Circle Talk session window to check each participant's status and see who is currently talking.

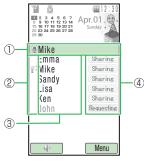
#### Note

- If IP Service (page 13-6) is set to *OFF*, Circle Talk is unavailable.
- When Hot Status connection status (page 20-6) is Offline, Circle Talk is unavailable. Switch to Online to use Circle Talk (page 20-7).
- Circle Talk is unavailable during voice or video calls. Also, you cannot receive another Circle Talk call during a Circle Talk session.

#### Subscription

● To use Circle Talk, you must subscribe to Hot Status (page 20-2). Connection fees apply for using Circle Talk.

#### Circle Talk Session Window



- ① Person with floor control
- ② ndicates the person with floor control.
- ③ Session members

If the member is saved to Phone Book, his/her name appears. Members not saved to Phone Book are identified by their phone number.

4 Check each member's status.

Requesting Requesting participation

Join In Connected

Sharing Participating

Leaving Quit

Not Available Unavailable

# **Making a Circle Talk Call**

1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press and hold  $\widehat{\ \ \ \ }$ 

Circle Talk connection is made

- To make a Circle Talk call from the Circle Talk Members List (page 20-14), press ☐ in Standby, select an entry, and then press (CT).
- 2 Press and hold 1 to talk

Talk when **Myself** appears.

- Initiator can talk as soon as Circle Talk is connected.
- \* Myself disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.
- **3** To leave the Circle Talk session, press  $\longrightarrow YES$ 
  - When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

#### Tip

 Press (Menu) from the Circle Talk Members List to perform the following (available functions vary by list):

#### Add Members/Edit Group/Delete/Loud Speaker

- To add or delete members to whom you are making a Circle Talk call at the same time, perform the following (put check mark(s) to select up to ten members):
  - Enter a phone number in Standby  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Circle Talk*  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Add  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{v}$
  - Select a member from the Circle Talk Members List  $\rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$  (twice)  $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$
  - Select a group from the Circle Talk Members List → 💌 → 😿 (Menu) → Add/Delete → 🔳
- Circle Talk Members List can also be displayed from the Main menu by selecting Communications → Circle Talk.
- Alternatively, initiate a Circle Talk call from:
  - Call Log
  - Phone Book
  - · Active Window
  - · Hot Status Members List
- You can make a Circle Talk call from the latest record of dialed Circle Talk call log (page 2-6) to rejoin the Circle Talk session which is still active. If the session has ended, a confirmation window appears asking you whether to initiate another Circle Talk call.

# **Answering a Circle Talk Call**

1 Press (Answer) when Circle Talk invitation arrives

Circle Talk connection is made.

- To reject the connection, press 🔀 (Reject).
- Alternatively, press [\*] to answer.
- **2** Press and hold **^**

Talk when **Myself** appears.

- Myself disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.
- **3** To leave the Circle Talk session, press  $\implies$  YES  $\rightarrow$  
  - When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

Tip

- If your answer status for Circle Talk is set to Auto Join (page 20-6), you are automatically connected when you receive a Circle Talk call.
- You can make a Circle Talk call from the latest record of received Circle Talk call log (page 2-7) to rejoin the Circle Talk session which is still active. If the session has ended, a confirmation window appears asking you whether to initiate another Circle Talk call.

# **Circle Talk Operations**

# **Contacting Another Member**

**1** During a Circle Talk session, press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Add$  $\rightarrow [v]$ 

**To Contact a Person from a Circle Talk Members List**Select *Members List* → Select a Members List entry → ■

To Contact a Person from the Hot Status Members List Select *Hot Status* → Select a person → ■

To Contact a Person from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book*→ ■→Select a person→ ■→Select a phone number→ ■

To Enter a Phone Number Directly

Select *Direct Input*→ ■ →Enter a phone number → ■

# **Adjusting the Earpiece Volume**

1 Use 🚺 during a session

Tip

• This adjusts the speaker volume when output is set for speaker.

#### **Switching Sound Output**

Tip

 From a Circle Talk Members List, press (Menu) and select Loud Speaker to switch sound output.

# 20

# **Circle Talk Members List**

# **Creating a Circle Talk Members List**

Save members to the Circle Talk Members List to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people.

Save up to 50 entries to Circle Talk Members List. Save people from Phone Book, Hot Status Members List or enter their phone number directly.

#### Creating an Entry

Main Communications **Circle Talk** menu

- Press [Y] (Menu) $\rightarrow Add Members \rightarrow [\blacksquare]$ 
  - If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List. press (Save) to display the Add Members window.
- **Select**  $Personal \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone Book|Hot Status|$ Direct Input  $\rightarrow$ 
  - If you select **Phone Book**, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- Select a member or enter a phone number→

#### Creating a Group

Organize entries by Group to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people. Save up to ten members to a group.

Main Communications **Circle Talk** menu

- Press [Y] (Menu) $\rightarrow Add Members \rightarrow [\bullet]$ 
  - If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List. press (Save) to display the Add Members window.
- Select  $Group \rightarrow [ \bullet ] \rightarrow Create \ New \rightarrow [ \bullet ]$
- **Select**  $Empty \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone Book|Hot Status|Direct$  $Input \rightarrow | \bullet |$ 
  - If you select **Phone Book**, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- Select a member or enter a phone number→
  - To save more members, repeat Steps 3 and 4.
  - If you want to change a member's phone number, select the member, press • twice, and then enter the phone number.
- Press 

  (Save)→Enter a group name→

• Press (Menu) in the Create New Group window to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):

Delete/Delete All

# Communications

#### Adding a Hot Status Members List Group

Add an entire group from the Hot Status Members List (page 20-4) as a Circle Talk Members List group.

Main menu Communications Circle Talk

- **1** Press ☑ (Menu)→Add Members→
  - If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press (Save) to display the Add Members window.
- **2** Select  $Group \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Hot Status \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Select a group→

#### Tip

 Hot Status members in No Group cannot be added using this procedure.

# **Editing a Group Name**

- 1 In Standby, press ⁴→Select a Circle Talk Members List group→☑ (Menu)
- **2** Select *Edit Group*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  *Rename*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$
- **3** Edit a group name→

# **Editing Group Member Information**

Add or delete group members, or change a group member's phone number.

- In Standby, press (→Select a Circle Talk Members List group→ (Menu)
- **2** Select Edit Group  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Change Member  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

#### **To Add Members**

Select *Empty*→ → *Phone Book/Hot Status/Direct Input*→ Select a member or enter a phone number → ■

#### To Delete a Member

Select a member you want to delete $\rightarrow \overline{v}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ 

#### **To Delete All Members**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ **Delete**  $All \rightarrow \bigcirc$  Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow$  **YES** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## To Change a Member's Phone Number

Select a member whose phone number you want to change→

(twice)→Enter a phone number→

**3** Press **□** (Save)

# **Deleting Entries from Circle Talk Members List**

1 In Standby, press A

#### **To Delete One Entry**

Select an entry  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $One \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### **To Select Multiple Entries to Delete**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select some entries  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Delete) $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **To Delete All Entries**

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **All**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Tip

• Circle Talk Members List can be accessed from:

Main menu $\rightarrow Communications \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Circle\ Talk \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# **Using S! GPS Navi**

#### About S! GPS Navi

S! GPS Navi uses location information by GPS satellite and by communication with base stations. View on the map where you are, and send your location information to compatible SoftBank handsets. Also retrieve information about your current location, and check the route to your destination. The navigation application is preinstalled in your handset. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

#### Note

- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, your position can be determined by the base station information. However, depending on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error could vary from hundreds of meters to several kilometers in radius.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- You cannot confirm the location during the time of Positioning Lock (page 21-4).

# **Starting a Navigation Application**

Use a navigation application to retrieve information about your current location or check the route to your destination.



# Select *Navi Appli*→

#### Tip

• End all paused S! Appli before activating a navigation application.

#### **Checking Your Current Position**

Display the current location by starting the Navi Application.



# **Select** *Locate* $Me \rightarrow \blacksquare$

● A confirmation window is displayed as to whether to send out the location information. If you select *Ask Once Only*, there is no confirmation window showing up next time.

#### Note

 When the sending location setting (page 21-4) is set to *Do not Send*, the current position cannot be checked. Set to *Always Ask* or *Send*.

#### Tip

 Positioning accuracy is indicated in three levels. Level 3 is the most accurate. If accuracy is level 1, it is recommended that you move to a new location and try again.

# Sending Current Position by S! Mail

Main menu Tools S! GPS Navi

**1** Select *Location Mail*→

When your current position is obtained, the Create Message window appears and the information is automatically inserted in the S! Mail text field

#### **Using Location Logs**

Check location logs for up to the last 20 retrieved location information items. If "%" is shown to the left of location history, it means the right location was successfully confirmed; "%" means a failure.

Main menu Tools S! GPS Navi

**1** Select *Location Logs*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a log $\rightarrow$ 

™ (Menu)

# Checking the Map from Location Information

Select *Open Map*→ ■→*Send/Ask Once Only*→ ■→Start the navigation application and display the map

•If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

#### **Starting the Navigation Application**

Select  $Go to \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Start$  the navigation application

Sending the Location Information by S! Mail

Select *Location Mail*→

Saving the Location Information to My Locations

Select *To Locations*→

#### **Saving Location Information to a Phone Book Entry**

Select *To Phone Book*→

#### **Deleting One Log**

Select  $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### **Deleting All Logs**

Select  $Delete \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Delete \ All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ your \ security \ code \ (page 1-22) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

#### **Displaying the Log Details**

Main menu Tools ► S! GPS Navi

**Select** *Location Logs*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  **Select** a  $\log$   $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

#### Tip

- When there are 20 location logs, the oldest log is deleted each time a new log is created.
- The location log is not saved to memory if positioning is stopped partway through.

# **Saving Location Information to My Locations**

Retrieve location information and save it to My Locations.

Main menu Tools ► S! GPS Navi

- **1** Select  $My Locations \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an unregistered item  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
- 2 Save the location information→ → Enter a title

Tip

- When the location information is saved, select My Locations and press (Menu) to perform the following:
  - Open Map/Go to/Location Mail/To Phone Book/Update/Delete/ Edit Title

# **Settings**

# **Setting Quick GPS**

In Quick GPS, your handset maintains network connections, allowing quicker access to location information. The "\$" indicator appears while you are using Quick GPS.

Main menu Tools S! GPS Navi

- **1** Select *Quick GPS* $\rightarrow$
- **2** Select a time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### Note

 Communication fees apply for using Quick GPS because your handset connects to the Web during use.

#### Tip

 The indicator changes to "%" (grey) when your handset is unable to retrieve location information because, for example, it is out of service area.

# Saving a Map URL

Set the map provider to show a map on the Internet.



**1** Select NAVI Settings → ■ → Map URL Settings → ■

#### Saving a Map URL

Select an unregistered item  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{v}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Edit~URL \rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a URL  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\bullet}$ 

#### **Editing the Name of Map URL**

Select a map URL  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Rename  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  )  $\rightarrow$  Edit the name  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

#### **Editing the Map URL**

Select a map  $URL \rightarrow V$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$  $\rightarrow Edit \ the \ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

# Setting a Map URL

Select a map URL→

#### **Deleting a Map URL**

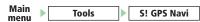
Select a map  $URL \rightarrow V$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

• The preset map URL cannot be edited or deleted.

# **Selecting the Navigation Application**

Select a navigation application.



- **1** Select NAVI Settings→ → Set Navi Appli→ ●
- **2** Select a navigation application→

#### Note

 When application becomes unavailable due to USIM replacement, reset handset (Reset All) or clear entries/files (Clear Memory) (page13-7).

# **Positioning Lock**

Disable positioning.



- **1** Select NAVI Settings  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Positioning Lock  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- 3 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

#### **Privacy Settings**

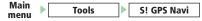
Set how to notify when you receive positioning request made from handsets and PCs.



- **1** Select *Location Navi*→
  - For the following procedure, follow the onscreen instructions.

# **Location Information Send Settings**

Set whether location information is sent automatically when a location information request is received while you are obtaining information.



- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Displaying a Confirmation Window Every Time

Select *Always Ask*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

Select **Send**→

Not Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

Select **Do not Send**→

# **S! Cast (Japanese Only)**

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night. When updates are received, Information Prompt (page 1-8) appears and the following indicators appear:

- Downloading content
- New S! Cast content
- Download failed
- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service. No additional fees are required for receiving content.

#### Subscribing/Canceling Subscription

Connect your handset to a special site to register or cancel transmission information and select programs.

•Communication fees apply while you are connected to the Web.

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

**1** Select  $Reg./Cancel \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Follow the onscreen instructions.

#### **Checking Content Updates**

Confirm the latest information.

The *What's new?* icon shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be "\( \mathbb{P}\)" when it has not been read; "\( \mathbb{Q}\)" when it has been read.

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

**1** Select What's new?→
■

#### Tip

- While What's new? is selected, press (Menu) and select Delete to delete the latest information.
- Lower portion of window may be blank, depending on the content.

#### **Checking Content from Information Prompt**

The latest information can be browsed from Information Prompt (page 1-8).

**1** When Information Prompt appears, select *New S! Cast*→

#### Tip

 While browsing information, press (Menu) to perform the following: Forward/Text Copy/Saving Mode/Tool/Yahoo! Keitai/Settings

# **Downloading Content Manually**

When an update cannot be received because your handset is turned off or the signal is weak, manually download the update. Only updates for that day can be downloaded.

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

**1** Select  $Get Latest \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

A connection is established to the redelivery page.

Note

Content cannot be downloaded on non-delivery days.

#### **Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt**

Establish a connection to the re-delivery page from Information Prompt (page 1-8).

- **1** When Information Prompt appears, select *S! Cast Info*→ 

  ■
- **2** Select  $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

# **Checking History**

Past updates are saved to History.

The icon *History* shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be " $\Re$ " when there is some information that has not been read; " $\Re$ " when all has been read.

Up to seven items are saved to History. The oldest item is deleted automatically.

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

**1** Select *History*→

**2** Select a content→

Tip

- While History is selected, press (Menu) and select *Delete* to delete the old information.
- Up to 3 MB of content including the latest item can be saved. When
  either the maximum number of content items or the maximum content
  size is reached, the oldest item is deleted each time there is a new item.
- You cannot reorganize the list.

#### **Weather Indicator**

Weather Indicator shows the weather forecast in the current area with indicators in Active Window (page 14-1). Weather Indicator is updated automatically.

A separate subscription is required to use Weather Indicator.

#### **Setting Weather Indicator**

- **1** Select Weather→ → View Settings → ■
- **2** Select  $Indicator \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### **Setting Information Prompt for Weather Indicator**

Set to display Weather Indicator from Information Prompt (page 1-8).

- **1** Select Weather  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow View \ Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Prompt \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select  $Show \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

• Use the Weather Indicator only as a guide.

#### **Checking Weather Forecast**



- **1** Select Weather  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$  Weather  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - ●When there is an unread forecast update, " " appears.

Tip

 You can view the weather forecast by selecting Weather Indicator and pressing in Active Window.

#### **Updating Weather Forecast**

Obtain the latest information manually when a Weather Indicator cannot be updated automatically.



# **Reading Electronic Books (Japanese Only)**

**BookSurfing** and **e-Book Viewer** are viewers to view electronic comic books, electronic photo albums, electronic publications (novels, etc.), and other electronic books.

You can enlarge or reduce images, scroll the window with simple operations, and use sound, vibration, and other effects to enhance your reading experience.

Some electronic books may require a content key for viewing.

Viewer	Supported Formats
BookSurfing	CCF (.CCF)
e-Book Viewer	XMDF(.ZBK, .ZBF, .ZBS)

<sup>\*</sup> Titles of unsupported file formats are not displayed.

# Main Entertainment

#### **Using BookSurfing**

Select **BookSurfing**→

#### **Using e-Book Viewer**

Select *e-Book Viewer*→

 For the following operations, see BookSurfing or e-Book Viewer help.

#### Tip

- Electronic books can be viewed by directly selecting a title from the *Books* folder. The appropriate viewer will start up in accordance with the file format of the electronic book selected.
- Alternatively, select the *BookSurfing* or *e-Book Viewer* S! Appli first from which you can browse electronic books. Note, however, that selecting the *BookSurfing* or *e-Book Viewer* S! Appli will allow you to browse only electronic books of a format that is supported by the browser you selected.

<sup>\*</sup> The viewer that starts up depends upon the file format. For information about checking the file format, see page 10-6.

<sup>\*</sup> e-Book Viewer may not be able to display some PC contents.

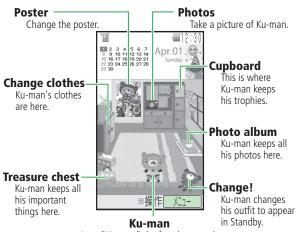
# **Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)**

"Ku-man" is a foot-loose and fancy free baby star bear. Visit Ku-man's room to change his outfit or receive messages from him.

#### Note

 You cannot visit Ku-man's room if the language setting is set to English. Set the language to 日本語 (Japanese).

#### **About Ku-man's Room**



I am "Ku-man" the foot-loose and fancy free star bear. Sometimes I like to travel around.

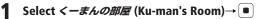
© Dora communications

#### Tip

 Check Ku-man's secrets at the website Toshiba User Club Site (page 22-6).

#### Opening Ku-man's Room

Main menu ■ エンタテイメント (Entertainment)



- When the confirmation window asking whether to open the room appears, select 起動する (Open).
- When the Idle Screen (page 12-8) setting confirmation window appears, select YES or NO.

#### Tip

**模様がえ** (Redecorate): Redecorate Ku-man's room. Select the room from お部屋データ (Room Data) in Ku-man Data.

<ーまんメール (Ku-man Mail): Check messages from Ku-man (page 22-7).

< ーまんデータ (Ku-man Data): Display or delete files from Ku-man Data or attach files to messages.

マイデータ登録 (My Info.): Set your name and Ku-man will remember it. Also set your birthday or anniversaries and Ku-man will celebrate with you.

*UserClubSite*: Download items for playing with Ku-man from the website Toshiba User Club Site. For information about connecting, see the Toshiba User Club Site guide.

**ヘル**プ (Help): Find out about the operations in Ku-man's room.

メモリ容量確認 (Memory Status): Check the amount of memory used in Ku-man Data.

**<一まんOFF** (Ku-man OFF): Turn off the Ku-man functions (Ku-man Mail. Idle Screen, Ku-man's Room).

 You can only download items for playing with Ku-man when UserClubSite (above) is selected.

#### Tip

- If Ku-man items become full, select the photos in the album that you
  want to keep, press w (メニュー (Menu)) and copy them to Data
  Folder or to the memory card before erasing the items from Ku-man
  Data.
- Ku-man sometimes goes off on journeys. You cannot meet him while he
  is on a trip, but he can send you mail. He will come back after a while,
  so visit his room from time to time to see if he is home.

# Playing with Ku-man

Look in Ku-man's Treasure Chest, change the outfit of Ku-man in Standby (page 12-8) or take photos.

**Example**: Changing the outfit of Ku-man in Standby

1 In Ku-man's Room, press Now you can operate Ku-man's Room.

- **2** Press ໍ (前へ (Previous))/ (次へ (Next)) to select へんし〜ん! (Change!)→ ■
- **3** Select an outfit→
  - Ku-man in his room wears the clothes from before the change.

#### Tip

- If you select たからばこ (Treasure Chest), you can see Ku-man's treasures. Select a treasure, and press 🐨 (メニュー (Menu)) and select メール送信 (Send Mail) to attach the treasure to a message. The treasure disappears from the Treasure Chest when it is attached to a message.
- Select きかえ (Change Clothes) to change Ku-man's clothes. Ku-man has different clothes for day wear and evening wear, so he only wears new clothes for that part of the day (day or evening). For example, if Ku-man changes to clothes B during the day, then he can only wear clothes B during the day. For the evening he changes to clothes C. Then, if he changes from clothes C to clothes D during the night, the next day he wears clothes B during the day and clothes D for the evening.

Example	Day	Night
Clothes on a day	Wears clothes A	Wears clothes C
Change to clothes B while wearing clothes A during the day.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes C
Then, change to clothes D while wearing clothes C during the night.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D
On the next day	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D

Ku-man also changes clothes for the different seasons.

## Checking Messages from Ku-man

Ku-man sends mail after you open his room for the first time, when he goes on trips and other times. Sometimes there are presents attached to messages from Ku-man

- **1** In Ku-man's Room, press ☑ (メニュー (Menu))→ 〈一まんメール (Ku-man Mail)→ ■
- **2** Select a message→

#### Tip

- To stop Ku-man from sending you mail, press 
   (メニュー (Menu))
   and select <一まんのFF (Ku-man OFF) in Ku-man's Room.</li>
- Check, save and delete messages from Ku-man in the same way as in the Message Box (page 17-11).
- Ku-man Mail uses the same memory as Received (page 17-11) in Message Box. If you delete all the received messages, or if you set Autodelete (page 17-14) setting to Set and the folder becomes full, messages from Ku-man are also deleted.
- You can save the attached data to Data Folder or to Ku-man Data.
- Ku-man Mail is mock mail that does not go through the service center.
   No communication charge is applied.
- You can also check Ku-man Mail as follows:
   Main menu → Messaging → Message Box → Received

# **About S! FeliCa**

S! FeliCa is a service used by cell phones with contactless IC card technology built in. The mark  $\bigcirc$  on the back of the handset can be held up to a reader/writer for such tasks as shopping with e-money, using a member's card or a point card. S! FeliCa can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that S! FeliCa cannot be used while the battery pack is removed.

# **Before Using S! FeliCa**

#### **■**FeliCa

FeliCa is contactless IC card technology that makes it possible to read data when an IC card is held up to a reader/writer.

#### ■IC card

The term "IC card" means an IC chip built in an S! FeliCa compatible terminal.

#### **■**Lifestyle-Appli

This is an S! Appli for using S! FeliCa.

- Your handset comes with a preinstalled e-money Lifestyle-Appli called "Edy".
  - "*Edy*" is the brand name of a prepaid e-money service managed by bitWallet. Inc.

#### Precautions When Using S! FeliCa

- The data on the IC card can be misused if your S! FeliCa compatible handset is lost or stolen. Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any losses suffered by you if this happens.
- Before deciding whether to use an S! FeliCa service, be sure to contact the service provider about the terms, conditions, and other rules governing its use.
- Connection charges may be incurred when downloading a Lifestyle-Appli or when using a Lifestyle-Appli that requires network connection.
- Do not remove the stickers from the back of the battery cover or from the handset in the area around the battery pack, and do not remove the battery cover. Doing so may make it impossible to use S! FeliCa.
- Certain types of service and usage conditions may cause data to be stored on the IC card. The procedure for deleting such data from the IC card depends on the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the S! FeliCa service provider.

# **Using S! FeliCa**

In order to use a Lifestyle-Appli, you first need to subscribe to an S! FeliCa service and configure a number of settings. Before using e-money, you need to make a deposit into your account.

#### S! FeliCa Flow

#### Downloading a Lifestyle-Appli

# Download the Lifestyle-Appli from an Internet website

• The Lifestyle-Appli is stored in the Lifestyle-Appli folder.

#### Subscribing to an S! FeliCa Service and Configuring Settings

Main menu ► Tools ► Lifestyle ► Lifestyle

# Select the Lifestyle-Appli you want to subscribe to or configure $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$

- Subscribe to the S! FeliCa service (hereinafter referred to as "service") and configure the required settings.
- Subscription and setting details depend on the Lifestyle-Appli. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Using an S! FeliCa Service

#### Note

- Details concerning Lifestyle-Appli applications and usage differ according to the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the S! FeliCa service provider.
- Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data or settings on the IC card due to malfunction or repair.
- Be sure to keep separate records of the security code, contact information, and other information for each service so you do not forget them.

#### Tip

• You cannot activate more than one Lifestyle-Appli at the same time.

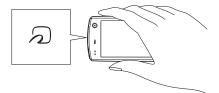
#### Using S! FeliCa

The e-money example below shows how to use a reader/writer to read IC card data.

- Before performing this procedure, you must subscribe to a service, configure its settings, and make a deposit in your e-money account.
- There is no need to activate Lifestyle-Appli to perform this procedure.
- S! FeliCa can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that a Lifestyle-Appli will not activate while the handset is turned off.

# 1 Hold the 2 mark up to the reader/writer

 Whenever there is difficulty being read, try moving the handset back and forth, left and right.



# 2 Check the reader/writer display to confirm that the read was performed

#### Note

- Data may not be read if there is a metal object or other obstruction between the mark and the reader/writer.
- S! FeliCa cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery pack to use S! FeliCa.

# Adding a Lifestyle-Appli

In addition to the Lifestyle-Appli preinstalled in the handset, you also can download other Lifestyle-Appli from the Internet.

 Before using a downloaded Lifestyle-Appli, you first need to subscribe to an S! FeliCa service.



**1** Select *Download* → • YES → • Select a Lifestyle-Appli

#### Note

- Downloading may not end normally if battery level is low.
- A downloaded Lifestyle-Appli cannot be used if you replace the USIM card.

# **Checking IC Card Information**

Main menu ► Tools ► Lifestyle ► Card Settings

- **1** Select *IC Card Status* → 
  - You cannot check the contents of an IC card that is locked (page 23-4).

# **Disabling S! FeliCa**

Your handset can be set to disable communication between the IC card and a reader/writer. "% " appears in Standby while the IC card is locked.

# **Turning IC Card Lock On or Off**



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- Select  $Allow/Do \ not \ Allow \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$  Enter the unlock time  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 
  - Press and hold to temporarily unlock the IC Card Lock when Allow is selected. IC Card Lock will turn back on automatically after the unlock time elapses.

#### Turning off the IC Card Lock Temporarily

- 1 In Standby, while the IC Card Lock is turned on, press and hold
- 2 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

#### Note

- IC Card Lock cannot be turned off temporarily while an S! Appli set as the Screensaver is active.
- If a Lifestyle-Appli is activated while IC Card Lock is turned off temporarily, IC Card Lock is not turned back on until the Lifestyle-Appli is exited or is paused, even after the unlock time set by IC Card Lock (left) expires.
- The handset will vibrate when the unlock time set for IC Card Lock (left) expires and IC Card Lock is turned back on. Take care that you do not drop the handset.

#### Tip

- IC Card Lock is turned back on automatically when the unlock time set for IC Card Lock (left) expires.
- IC Card Lock will be set if the handset is turned off while IC Card Lock is turned off temporarily.

# **Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location**

Disable S! FeliCa from a remote location by placing a call to the handset from another phone (Call Lock) or by sending an email message with a preset subject to the handset (Mail Lock).

#### Setting the Lock Phone Number

Register a phone number for performing Call Lock. You can have up to eight lock phone numbers registered at the same time.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select Call Lock  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Phone Numbers  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### Setting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select  $Phone Book \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  the party  $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$  the phone number  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (twice)

#### **Directly Entering a Phone Number**

Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow$  Enter the phone number  $\rightarrow$  (twice)

# Setting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select *Call Log* → ■ → Select the party → ■ (twice)

Specifying an Incoming Call from a Public Phone

Select *Payphone*→

Specifying an Incoming Call with No Caller ID

Select *Withheld*→

#### Tip

 Press (Menu) while a set lock phone number is selected to perform the following:

Add/Edit/Delete

#### Setting the Number of Calls for Locking

Specify the number of incoming calls for locking the IC card.



- Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select Call Lock  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Missed Count  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **3** Input the number of calls→

# **Setting the Lock Password**

Register a password (subject) for performing Mail Lock.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select  $Mail\ Lock \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Lock\ PW \rightarrow \bullet$

# 3 Input the lock password→

#### **Setting a Lock Notification Address**

Set an IC Card Lock notification address. You can have up to two lock notification addresses registered at the same time.

Main menu ► Tools ► Lifestyle ► Card Settings ► Remote Lock

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select Mail Lock  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Address  $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Press  $^{\Sigma_2}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow ^{\blacksquare}$

Setting the Mail Lock Address

Select *To Sender*→

Setting an Address from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* → ■ → Select the party → ■ → Select the email address → ■

Setting an Address from the Sent Log or Received Log
Select Sent Log/Received Log → ■ → Select the party → ■

Directly Inputting a Phone Number or Email Address
Select Phone Number/Email → ■ → Input the phone number/email address → ■ (twice)

- 4 Press (PUP/XE)

#### Tip

 Press (Menu) while a set lock notification address is selected to perform the following:
 Add/Edit/Delete

# Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off

Note that you cannot set to *ON* unless *Lock PW* (page 23-5) or *Phone Numbers* (page 23-5) is set.



- **1** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select *Mail Lock|Call Lock*→
- 3 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card

Lock the IC card from a remote location.

 Before performing these procedures, first configure Mail Lock (page 23-5) or Call Lock (page 23-5) settings and set Remote Lock to ON (page 23-6).

#### Using Mail Lock to Lock the IC Card

- 1 Create a message with a preset password for the subject, and send the message
  - Do not enter anything for any of the other fields of the message.
     IC Card Lock will turn on when the message is received.
     If there is a lock notification address (page 23-6) specified, a message will be sent to the address informing the recipient that IC Card Lock was turned on.

#### Note

 If the handset is unable to receive mail for some reason, IC Card Lock will not be turned on even if you send a Mail Lock message.

## **Releasing Remote Lock**

Set IC Card Lock (page 23-4) to *OFF* to release Remote Lock.

#### Using Call Lock to Lock the IC Card

- Place a call to the handset from one of the preset phone numbers
- **2** Hang up the phone
  - Repeat the procedure until you reach the number of times you preset for Call Lock settings (page 23-5) within three minutes. Each of the calls must be unanswered

#### Note

- The current incoming call count is cleared (becomes zero) whenever any one of the following occurs.
  - · If a call is received from another preset phone number
  - · If a call placed to the handset is answered
  - · If the handset is turned off
  - If the number of incoming calls does not reach the preset number within three minutes
- If Call Lock is performed while a video call is in progress, IC Card Lock will turn on but there will be no message to tell that the IC card has been locked.
- Call Lock cannot be performed while a voice call is in progress and Call Waiting (page 16-5) is set to OFF.

## Tip

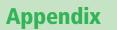
 When the number of calls reached to the preset number, a message informing that the IC card has been locked plays.

# **Configuring the External Startup Setting**

Specify whether a function (browser, messaging, vibration, notification, S! Appli) should start up upon request from an obtained data when the handset is held up before a particular reader/writer.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select a function→
- **3** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$



# **Default Settings**

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
S! Appli	Appli Settings Screensaver: OFF, Start Time: 3 sec, Calls&Alarms (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Volume: Level 3, Backlight (Backligh Same as Phone, Blink: ON), Vibration: ON		Chapter 19
Active Window	Settings		Page 14-4
Browser Settings		Font Size: Medium-Small (Yahoo! Keitai)/Extra-Small (PC Browser), Scrolling: 1 line, Downloads (Images: Download, Sounds: Download), Security (Manufacture #: Do not Send, Send Referer: Send, Cookie: Enable, Script: Ask when Connect, Authentica: Per Session, Session Info.: Show), Storage: Phone Memory	Page 18-12
Camera	Camera	Picture Size (Mobile: W480×H800, Digital: W2048×H1536), Date Stamp: OFF, Date Stamp Color: White w/Black, Quality: Fine, Effects: OFF, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Storage: Phone Memory, Icons Display: Show, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save: OFF, Mode: Mobile, Self-view: OFF, Multi Shots: OFF, Add Frame: OFF, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure:±0.0EV, Focus Mode: Auto, Picture Mode: OFF, Resist Shake: OFF, Grid: OFF	Chapter 7
	Video	Quality: (Video: Fine (Fixed) (W640×H480)/Normal (W320×H240), Video Mail: Normal, Short Video: Economy (Fixed)), Effects: OFF, Start/End: Pattern 1, ScreenDisplay: Normal screen, Icons Display: Show, Preview: ON, File Name: Date&Time, Storage: Phone Memory, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Mode: Video Mail, Record Size (Video: W640×H480), Self-view: OFF, Voice Record: ON, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure: ±0.0EV, Encode: MPEG4	Chapter 7
	Scan Data	Exposure: ±0.0EV	Page 7-13

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
	Display	Font Size: Medium-Small, Scrolling: Line, Show Address: Show All	Page 17-21
	Creating	Simple Input: No Entry, Category: No Entry, Signature: No Signature, Default Type: SMS, Notify Type: Show	Page 17-21
	Sending	Confirmation: Show, Vibration: ON, DeliveryCheck: Do not Ask, Expiry Time: Maximum, Priority: Normal, Delivery Time: Immediate, Reply to: OFF, Message Ctr: Number in the USIM card	Page 17-22
Messaging	Receiving	Retrieve Mode: All, Auto-extract (Picture: Show, Sound: Mute), Anti Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17)	Page 17-23
	3D Pict. Setting	Auto Play: OFF, Colors: Color 1	Page 17-23
	Received	Auto-delete: Do not Set	Dago 17 14
	Sent	Auto-delete: Set	Page 17-14
	Weather Icon	View Setting (Display Icon: Show, Information: Show)	Page 22-3
Entertainment	Ku-man's Room	Ku-man Data: Thumbnail View, My Info. (Name: あのね、, Birthday: O1月O1日, Anniversary: だいじな日, O1月O1日)	Page 22-5

Fu	nction Name	Default Setting	Page
	Alarms	Alarms: OFF, Alarm Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Image: Original, Repeat: Once, Snooze: OFF	Page 14-5
	Answering Machine	Setting: OFF, Set Duration: 18 sec	Page 14-7
	Notepad	_	Page 14-8
	Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%	Page 14-9
	Dictionary	_	Page 14-10
	Calendar	All View: Not Registered, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Calendar Lock: Unlock, First View: Monthly, Font Color: White w/Black	Page 14-10
	Tasks	All View: Not Completed, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Tasks Lock: Unlock	Page 14-19
Tools	Time Table	Time Table: No Entry, Set Time: Unset	Page 14-22
	Kitchen Timer	10 sec	Page 14-24
	Voice Recorder	Select Storage: Phone Memory	Page 14-24
	Number Memo	_	Page 14-25
	World Clock	_	Page 14-26
	Edit Picture	_	Page 7-22
	Idokoro Mail	Recipients List: No Entry, Areas List: No Entry	Chapter 15
	Photo Show	ON/OFF: OFF, Settings (Templates: Bubble, Image: Preset, Duration: 60 min)	Page 14-27
	Lifestyle (Card Settings)	IC Card Lock: OFF, Remote Lock (Mail Lock: OFF, Lock PW: No Entry, Notification: Send, Address: To Sender, Call Lock: OFF, Missed Count: 3 times, Phone Numbers: No Entry), Interface: ON	Chapter 23

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
	S! GPS Navi	Quick GPS: OFF, Map URL Settings: NAVITIME (http://map.navitime.jp/), Set Navi Appli: NAVITIME, Positioning Lock: OFF	Chapter 21
Tools	Transfer All	-	Page 14-28
(Continued)	Relocate	_	Page 14-31
	Update	_	Page 24-13
Data Folder		View Type: Thumbnail 3×3	Chapter 10
Media Player		Play Mode: All, Surround: OFF, Equalizer: Flat, Output Settings: Speaker/Earphone, Player Image: Normal	Chapter 8
TV		Subtitles: ON, Switch Audio: Main, Brightness: Brightness 3, Set Channels: No Entry, Datacasting (Start Comm.: Ask Before, Go to Secured: Ask Before, Access Memory: Do not Ask, Send Location: Always Ask, Manufacture #: Do not Send, Storage: Phone Memory), Off-timer: OFF, Volume: VOL12, Output Setting: Speaker/Earphone, Image Quality: Normal, First View: Full Screen	Chapter 6
Phone Book		My Details: Owner phone number only, Speed Calling: Unset, Select Storage: Phone Memory, Phone Book Lock: Unlock, Search Mode: List View, S! Addr. Book (Auto Sync: OFF, Sync Type: Synchronize)	Chapter 4

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Sounds	Normal	Ringtone Vol.: Level 3, Ringtone: Pattern 1, Duration: 5 sec, Feeling: ON, Vibration: OFF, Keypad Tone Volume: Level 1, Keypad Tone Type: Original 1, Sound Effects Tone Volume: Level 1, Sound Effects Tone Type: Original, Sound Vol.: Level 3, Earpiece Vol.: Level 5, Speaker Vol.: Level 5, Battery: ON	
	Manner Mode (Silent)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms: OFF, Feeling: Same as Phone, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Phone	
	Manner Mode (Alarms)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms (Alarms: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone), Feeling: Same as Phone, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Phone	Chapter 12
	Manner Mode (Drive)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: OFF, Alarms: OFF, Feeling: OFF, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON	
	Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms: OFF, Feeling: ON, Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON	
Manner M	ode	Silent	Page 12-1
	Idle Screen	Wallpaper: Preset, Others: 1-line Digit	
Display	Main Screens	Deco (Icons): Normal, Deco (Windows): Normal, In-Calls: Normal, Messages: Normal, Download: Normal, Power On: Normal, Power Off: Normal	Chapter 12,
	Mini Tool	Mini Tool: Preset	Page 1-21
	<b>Caller Details</b>	Caller Name: ON, Picture: ON	
	Wide View	IdleScreen: ON, Create Msg: ON, Msg Window: ON	

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
<b>Display</b> (Continued)	Font Settings	Font Size (General: Medium, Messaging: Medium-Small, PC Browser: Extra-Small, Mobile Web: Medium-Small, Text Entry: Medium-Small), Font Color: Pattern 1	
	Backlight	Power Saving: 15 sec, Keypad Light: 5 sec, Displays (Lighting Time: 5 sec, Brightness: Brightness 3), Media Player: Always ON	Chapter 12
	External Light	Notification (Missed Call: Color 1, Messages: Color 2, DeliveryCheck: Color 3, Missed Call: Color 4, Missed CT: Color 6, Hot Status: Color 5), Incoming (Voice Call: Color 1, Video Call: Color 2, Message (Pattern: Color 3, Feeling: ON), DeliveryCheck: Color 4, Missed Call: Color 5, Circle Talk: Color 6, Hot Status: Color 5)	chapte. 12
	Clock	12hour/24hour: 24 hour, World Clock (City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST ON/OFF: OFF)	Pages 12-8,14-26, 14-27
	Sub Menu View	Show	Page 12-11
Phone Settings	AV Output	NTSC	Page 14-32
	言語選択	日本語	Page 12-10
	<b>Navigation Keys</b>	🕒 : Active Window, 😱 : Phone Book, 🖭 : Dialed Numbers, 🖭 : Received Calls	Page 12-10
	Side Key	Manner Mode	Page 12-11

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
	PIN Settings	OFF	
	Change PIN	_	Daga 12 1
	Change PIN2	_	- Page 13-1
	Change Password	9999	
	Password Look	Phone Closed: OFF, Power Saving: OFF, Power Off: OFF	Page 13-2
Security	<b>Function Lock</b>	Phone Book: Unlock, Calendar: Unlock, Tasks: Unlock, Call Log: Unlock, Message Log: Unlock	Page 13-3
	Biometrics	OFF	Page 13-4
	Secret Mode	Hide	Page 13-5
	Restricted Mode	Fixed Dial # (Number List: Unset), Web: OFF	Page 13-8
	IP Service	ON	Page 13-6
	Call Services	Intl. Calls (Intl. Code: 0046010)	Page 14-33
	Call Time&Cost	Last Call Time: 000:00:00, Total Call Time: 000:00:00, Last Call Cost:YEN, Total Call Cost: 0YEN, Cost Unit (Unit: YEN, Rate: 1.0000000), Cost Display: OFF, Cost Limit:—	Pages 2-8, 2-9
Call	Earphone	Auto Answer: OFF, Earphone Call (Earphone Call: OFF, Set Number: Not Registered)	Page 14-37
Settings	Answer Type	Open to Talk: OFF, Any Keys: OFF	Page 12-11
	Video Call	Alt. Picture: OFF, Image Quality: Standard, Hold Setting (Hold on Call: Preset, Hold Answer: Preset), Mute: OFF, Loud Speaker: ON, Auto Answer (Auto Answer: OFF, Answer List: Unset), Self-view: ON	Chapter 5

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Call	Reject Calls	Specific #s (Specific #s: OFF, Reject List: No Entry), Unknown: OFF, Withheld: OFF, Payphone: OFF, Unavailable: OFF	Page 12-12
Settings	Offline Mode	OFF	Page 2-11
(Continued)	Show My Number	OFF	Page 12-13
	<b>External Device</b>	Empty	Page 12-14
	Bluetooth®	ON/OFF: OFF, Paired Device (Paired Device: Unset, Trust Device: OFF), Settings (Visibility: Show, Set Handsfree: Handsfree)	Page 11-6
Connectivity	Infrared	ON/OFF: OFF	Page 11-2
	USB	Confirmation: Do not Display, Battery: ON	Page 11-14
Ku-man Idle Screen		OFF	Page 12-8
Priority		Mid-operation (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Video (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Media Player: Pause, Voice Recorder (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), S! Appli (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), TV (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue, Alarm: Pause)	Page 12-13
Mamani	Memory Status	_	Page 12-14
Memory	Format Card	-	Page 9-3

Func	tion Name	Default Setting	Page
	Call Forward	-	Page 16-2
	Voice Mail	_	Page 16-4
Call   Services	Call Waiting	_	Page 16-5
Jervices	Multiparty Call	_	Page 16-6
	Call Barring	_	Page 16-7
	Dialed Number	_	
	Received Call	_	
Call Log	Dialed Circle Talk	_	Pages 2-6, 2-7
	Received Circle Talk	_	
Text Entry		Predict Text: ON, Input Method: Standard, Font Size: Medium-Small, Clipboard: Unset	Chapter 3
Shortcuts		Create Message, Message Box, Main Menu, Media Player, Calendar, Time Table, JPN Dictionary, ENG-JPN Dictionary, JPN-ENG Dictionary, Calculator, IC Card Lock	Page 14-34
Press and hold *	Hold	Unset	Page 13-7
Press and hold # 2/9	Manner Mode	Unset	Page 2-10

<sup>\*</sup> This operation is for when your handset is closed.

## Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	• Is the battery pack inserted properly (page 1-11)? • Is the battery charged (page 1-10)?
Displays Please check connection with your charger. and cannot charge the battery.	Is there dust on the connections and contacts of the AC charger, handset or battery pack? Clean the connections and contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
Cannot operate the handset normally after turning it on.	<ul> <li>Does the PIN Entry window appear? PIN Settings (page 13-1) is set to ON. Enter your PIN1 code.</li> <li>Does the " " indicator or Password Lock appear on the display? The password lock (page 13-2) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-22).</li> <li>Does USIM not inserted. Power off the phone and insert USIM. appear on the display? The USIM card was not read properly. Turn the power off and make sure the USIM card is inserted properly (page 1-2).</li> </ul>
Cannot establish a connection for voice and video calls or use mail and Web functions.	<ul> <li>Does the " indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset.</li> <li>Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-5) of your handset?</li> <li>Does the " indicator or Offline Mode appear on the display? Cancel offline mode (page 2-11).</li> </ul>
Cannot make voice and video calls.	<ul> <li>Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code?</li> <li>Does Network busy. appear on the display?</li> <li>Is Fixed Dialing Number (page 13-8) set?</li> <li>Is Call Barring (page 16-7) set?</li> </ul>

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot receive voice and video calls.	<ul> <li>Is Reject Calls (page 12-12) set?</li> <li>Is Call Forward (page 16-2) or Voice Mail (page 16-4) set to <i>All Calls</i>?</li> <li>Is Call Barring (page 16-7) set?</li> </ul>
Cannot send messages.	• Is Fixed Dialing Number (page 13-8) set? • Is Call Barring (page 16-7) set?
Cannot receive messages.	• Is Call Barring (page 16-7) set?
Calls are interrupted or disconnected.	<ul> <li>Does the "a" indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset.</li> <li>Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-5) of your handset?</li> </ul>
The handset does not respond to key presses.	<ul> <li>Does the " " " indicator or <i>Password Lock</i> appear on the display? The phone lock (page 13-2) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-22).</li> <li>Was your handset closed and the " indicator displayed on the display? The hold is activated (page 13-7). Press and hold while your handset is closed.</li> </ul>
Cannot use FeliCa.	• Is "%" displayed? Turn off IC Card Lock (page 23-4).

## **Updating Software**

Check if software on the handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network.

- No communication charge applies to update software.
- There are two ways to update software: Update now and Schedule update.

**Update now**: Update software now.

**Schedule update**: Set a date and time to update software so that software is updated automatically at the time you have specified.

- Software updates may take a long time.
- Update software when the battery is fully charged. Do not remove the battery pack while updating.
- Please update software in a place where the handset has a good reception, and do not change locations while updating.
- You cannot use other functions during updates. If a program is running, software update is not available.
- You can update software without deleting Phone Book entries, images and sounds saved in the handset. However, data may be lost or damaged if the handset is not in good condition (broken, damaged, wet, etc.). We recommend that you make backups of your important data.

### Note

 If the software update fails, you may not be able to operate your handset. In this case, contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

### **Updating Software**

Main menu Tools Update

- Select  $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select Agree→ (twice)→Enter your center access code (page 1-22)→ → (OK)

The check result is displayed.

### **Updating Software Immediately**

Select *Update now*→ ● → Press ● when the download is completed

A message appears to indicate that the download is completed.

 When software is updated, the handset restarts automatically. After restarting, a confirmation window appears showing update information.



### **Selecting the Date and Time to Update Software**

Select  $Schedule\ update \longrightarrow \square \longrightarrow \square$  (YES)  $\longrightarrow$  Select a date  $\longrightarrow \square \longrightarrow$  Select time  $\longrightarrow \square$  (twice)

- If a date or time you want to specify is not on the screen, select
   Next Time Slot or Next Week
- ◆ A confirmation window for software updates appears on the scheduled time. Press ■ or leave the handset for about 10 seconds to start automatic software updates.



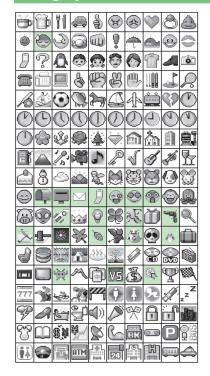
### Note

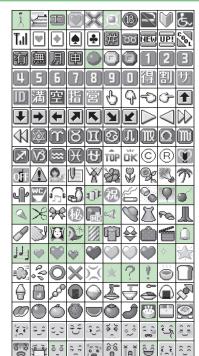
- If you are using another function on the handset on the scheduled time, software is not updated.
- If the handset indicates that it is out of the service area on the scheduled time, software is not updated.

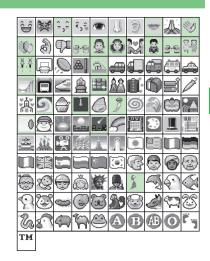
#### Tip

● To cancel the reservation for updating software, perform the following. Main menu  $\rightarrow$  *Tools*  $\rightarrow$  *Update*  $\rightarrow$  *YES*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  *Agree*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (twice)  $\rightarrow$  Enter your center access code (page 1-22)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$   $\boxtimes$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxtimes$  (YES)  $\rightarrow$  *Cancel schedule*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$   $\boxtimes$  (YES)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ 

## **Pictograph List**







- Pictographs in  $\square$  are animated.
- Pictographs do not appear in email or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

## **Arrange-picture List**

Following images are preinstalled. Insert images in S! Mail text messages (page 17-6).

キラキラライン	(†** *** *** ***
星空	
おめでとう	かかのでとうで
ありがとう	THANK YOU
ごめんね	ごめんね
好き	
ぶんぷん	(*sh)
つかれた	ಪ್ರ

やったー!	*
がんばれ!	类
OK	*
びっくり	₩.
くーまんライン1	<b>4</b> 9.9.9.4
くーまんライン2	** * * * * * * *
く一まんダンス	0000

## **Storage Capacity**

## **Data Folder**

Data Folder	Up to 1 GB*
-------------	-------------

<sup>\*</sup> The S! Appli Library shares its memory with Data Folder.

## Mail

Received	Up to 5 MB Up to 2,000 messages	
Sent, Unsent	Up to 1.5 MB Up to 600 messages	
Drafts	Up to 700 KB Up to 60 messages	

## Internet

Cache	Up to 300 KB	
Bookmarks	Up to 50 bookmarks	
History (URL) Up to 10 URLs		

## **Main Specifications**

Frequency Range	1920 - 2170 MHz	
Continuous Talk Time	Approx. 140 min. (Video call: Approx. 80 min.)	
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 330 hrs	
Charging Time	Approx. 120 min.	
Dimensions when closed (W×H×D)	Approx. 51 × 112 × 18 mm	
Maximum Output	0.25 W	
Weight	Approx. 145 g (with battery pack)	

- The values above were calculated with the battery pack attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery pack is attached.
- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is closed, the handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery pack is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If the handset is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced to half or less.

  This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.).
- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time may be reduced to half or less if the handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or the handset is left in standby mode when it is outside the service area.

  Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time.

  If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery pack.
- If the Mobile Light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a flashlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When an S! Appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If the handset is used with the Display illuminated frequently (for Yahoo! Keitai use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- Note that the LCD Display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

## AC Charger

Input Voltage: 100 to 240 V AC

: 50/60 Hz

**Charging Temperature Range**: 5 to 35°C

# Glossary

Term	Definition
3G	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system.
USIM Card	Use the handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Contacts list entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
USIM PIN	A number required for using the USIM card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
S! Mail	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.
Cache	The location in the handset for temporarily storing the data of displayed Web pages, etc.
S! Appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of S! Appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.
FeliCa	Contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. It allows data to be exchanged by simply holding an IC card up to a reader device. The 911T handset is capable of managing multiple types of data, so it can be used for such things as e-money and a membership card.
HSDPA	Short for High-Speed Downlink Packet Access, HSDPA is a 3G mobile telephone communication protocol that provides faster W-CDMA data communication speeds.

Index

Numeric	
3D Pictogram Display	17-23
Auto Play	
Font, Background Colors	17-23

#### Δ

AC Charger	1-1
Access Functions	
Accessories	i
Account Name	17-
Active Window	14-
Change Icons	14-
Contact Members	
Hot Status Information	14-
Live Monitor	14-
Members List	14-
Open	
Settings	14
Weather Information	
After Sales Service	24-3
Alarms	14-
Alarm Tone	14-
Set	14-
Snooze	

Stop	
Answer Calls	2-3
Answer Video Calls	
Answering Machine	14-7
Delete	2-4, 14-8
Play	2-4, 14-8
Record	2-4
Ringing Duration Setting	14-8
Set	14-7
Any Key Answer	12-11
Attached Files	
Attach Files	17-7
Automatic Extraction	17-23
Save Attached Files	
Auto Answer	
Auto-delete Setting	
Automatic Extraction	
Automatic Retrieve	
Automatic Retrieve	
В	
Backlight	12.0
•	
Adjust Brightness	
Lighting Time	
Battery Alarm	
Battery Level	
Battery Pack	1-10

Insert/Remove ......1-11 **Biometrics**.....1-12

Bluetooth Communications	
Activate Bluetooth®	11-6
Authentication PIN Code	11-6
Dial-up Connections	11-10
Handsfree	11-9
ON/OFF Setting	11-6
Paired Device	11-6
Receiving	11-8
Search Device	11-6
Sending Data	11-7
Trusted Device	11-7
Bluetooth® Settings	11-10
Change Device Name	
Delete Device	11-1
Device Property	11-10
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Stereo Headset	
Connect	8
Play	8-6
Register	
Bookmarks	
Add	
Create Folder	
Delete	18-6
Edit	18-5
Move	
Send	
Use	
BookSurfing	22-4

Browser Settings	18-12
Clear All Cookie	18-13
Clear Cache	18-13
Cookie	18-14
Font Size	18-12
Manufacture Number	18-13
Memory Management	18-13
Referer Setting	
Root Certificates	
Scroll Unit	18-12
Text Browse	18-12
Warning Window	18-13

C

Cache	18-1, 18-13
Calculator	14-9
Exchange Rate	14-9
Tax Rate	14-9
Calendar	14-10
Add	14-14
Alarm	14-14
Calendar Lock	14-17
Delete	14-16
Edit	14-16
Holiday Setting	14-17
Stop Alarm	
Call Barring	16-7
Call Barring Service Code	·1-22, 16-8

Cost Limit Setting Currency Setting Call Forward Call Log Call Time Call Waiting Caller Details Display Caller ID Caller ID Setting Camera Add to Phone Book Auto Focus Auto Save Camera Mode	2-9
Currency Setting	2-9
Call Forward  Call Log  Call Time  Call Waiting  Caller Details Display  Caller ID  Caller ID Setting  Add to Phone Book  Auto Focus  Auto Save  Camera Mode	
Call Log	
Call Time	2-6
Caller Details Display	
Caller Details Display	16-5
Caller ID	
Caller ID Setting  Camera  Add to Phone Book  Auto Focus  Auto Save  Camera Mode	
Add to Phone Book Auto Focus Auto Save Camera Mode	
Add to Phone Book	
Auto SaveCamera Mode	
Camera Mode	7-6. 7-7
Camera Mode	7-17
Color Control	7-19
Date Stamp	7-16
Delay Timer	
Digital Camera	
Edit Pictures	7-22
Effects	7-19
Encode	7-13
Exposure Control	7-4
File Name Setting	7-19
Finder Window	
Focus Mode	7-8
Frame	7-10, 7-23
Full Screen Display	
Grid	7-17

cons Display	7-19
ndicators	7-2
ey Guide Display	7-5
ey Shortcut	7-20
Mobile Camera	
Лobile Light	7-5
Aulti Shots	
/lute	7-21
icture Mode	7-9
icture Quality	7-15
icture Size	, 7-15, 7-22
ictures	7-5
review Setting	7-17
lesist Shake	7-8
review Window	7-1
elf-view mode	7-5
end Functions	7-21
hort Video	
hutter Sound	7-16
tart & End Sounds	7-17
torage Place Setting	7-18
ake Picture for Phone Book Entry.	7-7
ake/Record	7-6, 7-11
ideo Camera	. 7-11, 7-13
/ideo Mail	. 7-11, 7-13
ideo Modes	. 7-11, 7-13
ideo Quality	7-16
/ideos	7-10
oice Record	7-13

vvnite Balance	
Zoom	7-
Center Access Code	1-2
Certificates1	8-10, 18-1
Change Email Address	
Charger	1-1
Charging	1-1
AC Charger	1-1
Desktop Cradle	1-1
In-Car Charger	
Charging Time	1-12, 1-1
Circle Talk	
Answer Circle Talk Calls	20-1
Create an Entry	20-1
Delete Members	
Dialed Numbers	2-
Earpiece Volume	
Edit Group	
Edit Group Name	
Make Circle Talk Calls	
Members List	
Received Calls	
Switch Sound Output	
Clear Memory	
Clock Display	
Switch 12hour/24hour Clock	
Wallpaper & Clock Setting	
Codes	
Call Barring Service Code	1-2

Center Access Code	1-22
Internet Security Code	1-22
Security Code	1-22
Communications	20-1
Hot Status	20-2
S! Loop	20-1
S! Town	
Continuous Standby Time	24-18
Continuous Talk Time	24-18
Converter	14-9
Create/Send Messages	
Attach Files	17-7
Decorate	17-6
Font Size	17-6
Mail Template	17-7
Options	. 17-8, 17-10
Recipient	17-4
Signature	17-22
Subject	17-4
Text	17-4
To/Cc/Bcc	17-5
Cursor	
Customer Service	24-33
Customize Main Menu	1-19
D	
Data Folder	10-1

**Data Management** 

	BOOK FILES	۵-۱۱
	Change Folder/File Name	10-12
	Change Order	10-15
	Copy	10-14
	Delete	
	Document Files	10-8
	Edit Files/Folders	10-12
	File Properties	10-9
	Files for Gamendeco	10-7
	Flash® Files	10-6
	Lifestyle-Appli	10-2
	List View	10-9
	Main Menu/Mini Tool Image Files	10-7
	Melody Files	10-4, 10-10
	Memory Status	10-9
	Move	10-13
	Music Files	10-5
	Open	
	Picture Files	
	Recorded Digital TV Files	10-5
	S! Appli	10-2
	Slide Show	
	Structure of Data Folder	10-1
	Templates	10-6
	Text Files	10-7
	Thumbnail View	10-9
	Video Files	
	vObjects	
D	ate & Time	1-15

Default Settings	24-2
Delete Messages	
Auto-delete Setting	17-14
Delete All Messages	17-18
Delete Multiple Messages	17-18
Delete One Message	
Delivery Check	
Delivery Report	17-16
Delivery Time	17-22
Desktop Cradle	
Dialed Numbers	2-6
Dial-up Connections 11-4, 11	-10, 11-14
Dictionary	14-10
Digital TV	
Capture	6-9
Datacasting	6-6
Display Subtitles	6-5
First View	6-6
Off-timer	6-13
One Seg	6-1
Play	6-8
Program Guide	6-5
Record	6-7
Set Channels	6-3, 6-10
Switch Audio	6-6
TV Links	6-7
Watch	
Digital TV Settings	6-10
Display	1-6

Display Power Saving	12-9
Download8	-8, 10-3, 19-2
Drafts	17-10
Edit	17-10
Save	17-10
Send	17-10
E	
Earpiece Volume 2-5, 5-	2. 12-4. 20-13
Earphone-microphone	
Auto Answer	
One-touch Answering	14-37
One-touch Calling	

 Set Phone Number
 14-37

 Edit Pictures
 7-22

 Add Frame
 7-23

Add Stamp ......7-23

 Add Text
 .7-24

 Change Picture Size
 .7-22

 Create Wallpaper
 .7-25

 Mosaic
 .7-24

Overlay .......7-25 Rotate ......7-25

Convert All ......3-14

Copy/Cut/Paste.....3-12

Delete ......3-15

Font Size	3-16
Input Method	3-15
Insert	3-13
Quote Information	3-13
Replace Text	
Reset Prediction Dictionary	
Save to Notepad	
Save to Phone Book	
Select Range	3-14
Undo	
Word Predictions	3-15
Emoticons	
Enter Characters	3-3
Address Library	3-8
Alphanumerics	3-7
Beeper Mode	3-8
Convert Names	3-5
Convert to Alphanumerics/Katakana .	3-6
Convert to Kanji	3-3
Custom Window	3-16
Dakuten and Handakuten	3-4
Display in Opposite Order	3-6
Emoticons	3-7, 3-16
Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana	3-3
Line Break	
Lower Case	3-4
Phonetic Conversion	3-5
Pictographs	3-7

Edit......3-12

Space	3-5 12-14 12-9
F	
FeliCaFixed Dialing NumberFolder Management	
Add	
DeleteFolder Security	
Rename	
Font Size	
Browser SMS/S! Mail	
Text Entry Window	
Forward Message	17-15
G	
Glossary	24-20

Н	
Handsfree Operation	
I	
IC Card	
Indicators  Camera  Dialed Numbers  Display  Hot Status  Media Player  Message  Received Calls	2-6 20-4, 20-10 8-1

	Video	7-3
Н	Video Call	5-1
andsfree Operation2-6	Information Prompt	1-8
andstrap Hole1-5	Infrared Communication	
old 2-3, 13-7	Authentication Password	11-1
ot Status20-2	Dial-up Connections	11-4
Hot Status Members List20-3	Receiving All	11-3
Member Status Window20-8	Receiving Data	11-2
My Status20-6	Sending All	11-3
Settings20-9	Sending Data	11-2
3	International Call Service	14-33
	Add International Code and Coun	try Code 2-2
I	Add to Country Code List	
C Card23-1, 23-3	Change International Code	
IC Card Lock23-4	Internet	
lokoro Mail15-1	Linked Information	18-8
Areas List	PC Website Browser	18-4
Notification Mail15-3	View/Use Websites	18-2
Recipients List15-1	Internet Security Code	
n-Car Charger1-13	IP Service Setting	
ndicators	3	
Camera7-2		
Dialed Numbers2-6	K	
Display1-6	Key Assignment	3-2
Hot Status 20-4, 20-10	Key Setting	
Media Player8-1	Navigation Keys	
Message17-11	Side Key	
Received Calls2-7	Keypad Lock	
Text Entry3-1	Kitchen Timer	

Ku-man's Room	22-5
Check Messages	22-7
Open	22-5
Play	22-6
Set for Standby	
,	
L	
Landscape Index	1-19
Language	
License Information	19-7
Lifestyle-Appli	
Add Lifestyle-Appli	
Use Lifestyle-Appli	
озе 2еззуле / фр	25 2
M	
Mail Box Volume	17-21
Mail List	
Delete	17-20
Retrieve/Update	17-19
Mail Template	
Mail Type	
Main Menu	
Main Specifications	24-18
Make Calls	

 Make International Calls
 2-2

 Make Video Calls
 5-1

 Manner Mode
 2-10, 12-1

Manner Mode Settings	12-1
Alarms	12-1
Original	12-1, 12-2
Silent	12-1
Manufacture Number Se	tting18-13
Media Player	8-1
Background Playback	8-11
Change Jacket	8-2
Delete	8-7
Download	8-8
Equalizer	8-10
Full Screen	8-2
Hide Icons	8-2
Mute	8-2
Play	8-2
Play Modes	8-9
Playlists	8-6
Priority	12-13
Recent	8-8
Search Time	
Send	8-10
Streaming	8-8
Surround	8-10
View Property	8-2, 8-11
Voice Cancel	
Memory Card	9-1
Backup	14-28
File Management	
Format (Initialize)	9-3

Insert/Remove	9-1
Memory Status	
Memory Management	
Clear Authentication	18-13
Clear Cache	18-13
Clear Cookie	18-13
Cookie	18-14
Memory Status	12-14
/lessage Box	17-11
Change Order	17-18
Drafts	17-11
Manage Folders	17-14
Received	
Rename Folder	17-14
Sent	17-11
Switch Unread/Read	
Unsent	
Nessage List Window	17-11
Nessage Settings	17-21
3D Pictograms	
Creating Settings	
Display Settings	
Receive Settings	
Send Settings	17-22
/lessaging	17-1
/lini Tool	
MobileRUPO	
Nultiparty Call	
Multiple Connections	2-1

My Details	2-10, 4-10
-	
N	
Navigation Key	xvi, 12-10
Network Settings	12-14
New Messages	17-2
Notepad	14-8
Number Memo	2-6
View Number Memo	14-25

Mute.....5-5

U	
Offline Mode	2-11
Open to Talk	12-11
Operations for Web Pages	18-7
Access by Entering URL	18-7
Change Text Encoding Type	18-12
Change View	18-7
Playing Flash®	18-9
Save to Event	18-9
Save to My Locations	18-9
Send URLs via Messages	18-8
Server Certificates	18-10
Sound Volume	
Text Copy	18-8
Update	
Use Files	18-10

View Property	18-9
Operations While Viewing Message	es 17-13
Move	17-13
Text Copy	17-13
Optional Accessories	ii
Dptional Services	16-1
Original Manner Mode	12-1, 12-2
Owner Information	4-10

P	
Parts & Functions Password Lock Pause	13-2
PC Website Browser	
Phone Book	4-1
Call Log	
Change View	
Copy/Move	4-9
Delete	
Edit	4-9
External Light	4-3
Group Setting	17-21
Location Information	
Memory Status	4-5
Owner Information	
Picture	4-2
Prohibit	4-11
Ringtone Pattern	4-3

Ringtone Volume	4-3
S! Address Book	4-12
Save	4-2
Search Modes	
Secret Setting	4-3
Select Storage	
Setting Groups	
Sort	
Speed Calling	4-1
Vibration	4-3
vObjects	10-1
Pictographs	3-7
Pictograph List	24-15
PINs	1-3, 13-1
Change	13-
PIN Lock	
PIN2	1-3, 13-
PUK Codes	
PUK/PUK2	
Set	13-
USIM Lock	1-3, 13-2
Playlists	8-6
Create	
Delete	
Edit	
Play	
Power On/Off	
Predictions	
Conversion Prediction	3-10

Phrase Prediction	3-10
Word Predictions	3-9, 3-15
Priority	17-8. 17-22
Priority Setting	12-13
Protect Messages	
•	
Q	
QR Code	7.12
Check	
Scan	
JC411	
R	
Receive Messages	
Check New Messages	17-2
Check Received Messages	
Forward Server Messages	
Retrieve Mail	

Received Calls ...... 2-7

 Add to Phone Book
 17-18

 Attached Files
 17-17

 Auto-delete
 17-14

 Change Order
 17-18

 Display
 17-2, 17-11

 Edit Folder Name
 17-14

 Forward
 17-15

 Move
 17-19

**Received Messages** 

Protect	1/-1/
Reply	17-15
Sort Setting	17-14
Switch Unread/Read	
Reject Calls	2-5
Reject List	12-12
Add	12-12
Setting	12-12
Rename Folder	.10-12, 17-14
Reset	13-7
Reset All	
<b>Reset Confirmation Window</b>	
Reset Setting	13-7
Restricted Mode	13-8
Add	13-9
Setting	
<b>Retrieve Network Information</b>	
Ringing Duration	12-3
Ringtone	12-3
Ringtone Volume	
Root Certificates	18-14
S	
S! Address Book	
S! Appli	
Delete	
Download	
End	19-2

License Information	19-7
Move	19-4
Network S! Appli	
Property	
Resume	
Route Certificate	19-7
S! Appli Library Display	19-3
Security Settings	
Start	
Suspend	
5! Appli Library	19-3
6! Appli Screensaver	
6! Appli Settings	
Backlight	19-6
Memory Card Sync	19-6
Priority	19-5
Screensaver	19-1, 19-5
Vibration	19-6
Volume	19-6
5! Cast	22-1
Check	22-1, 22-2
Delete	22-1, 22-2
Download Manually	22-2
Get Latest	22-2
History	22-2
Latest Information	22-1
New S! Cast	
S! Cast Information	22-2
Subscribe/Cancel Subscription	22-1

S! FeliCa	23-1
Edy	23-
FeliCa	23-
IC Card	
IC Card Lock	
IC Card Status	23-3
Interface	23-8
Lifestyle	23-
Remote Lock	
S! GPS Navi	21-1
Locate Me	21-
Location Information	21-
Location Logs	
Location Mail	
Location Navi	
Location Property	21-4
Map URL Settings	21-3
My Locations	
Positioning Lock	
Quick GPS	
Select Navigation Application	
Start Navigation Application	
S! Loop	20-1
S! Mail	
Create/Send	
Decorate Text	17-6
Retrieve	
S! Mail Notification17	
S! Mail Settings	

Auto-extract	
Delivery Check	
Delivery Time	17-22
Expiry Time	17-22
Group Setting	17-21
Mail Type	17-22
Priority	17-22
Retrieve Mode	17-23
Show Address	17-21
Signature	17-22
Simple Input	17-21
Spam Filtering	17-23
! Town	20-1
aved Pages	18-4
ecret Mode	13-5
ecret Mode ecret Setting	
	4-3
ecret Setting	4-3 1-22, 13-1
ecret Setting ecurity Code	4-3 1-22, 13-1 17-16
ecret Setting ecurity Codeelority Codeelority Code	4-3 1-22, 13-1 17-16 17-22
ecret Setting ecurity Codeelect Linked Information end Settings	4-31-22, 13-117-1617-22
ecret Settingecurity Codeelect Linked Informationend Settings	4-31-22, 13-117-1617-2217-22
ecret Settingecurity Codeelect Linked Informationend Settings	4-31-22, 13-117-1617-2217-2217-22
ecret Setting	4-31-22, 13-117-1617-2217-2217-2217-22
ecret Setting	4-31-22, 13-117-1617-2217-2217-2217-2217-22
ecret Setting	4-31-22, 13-117-1617-2217-2217-2217-2217-2217-22
ecret Setting	4-31-22, 13-117-1617-2217-2217-2217-2217-2217-22
ecret Setting	

Delete	17-18
Display	17-11
Rename Folder	
Sort Setting	17-14
Server Certificates	
Server Mail Box	
Delete Server Messages	17-20
Retrieve	
Server Mail Box Status	
Server Message	17-19
Delete	17-20
Forward	17-20
Mail List	
Retrieve	17-19
Shortcut Menu	14-34
Access	14-34
Delete	14-35
Edit	14-34
Set	14-34
Side Key Setting	12-11
Signal Strength	1-6
Signature	
Cancel	17-22
Save	17-22
SMS	17-1
Create/Send	17-9
D	17.7
Retrieve	17-2
Retrieve SMS Settings	

Expiry Time	17-22
Font Size	17-21
Mail Type	17-22
Scroll Unit	
Signature	17-22
Soft Keys	xvi
Sound Effects	
Sound Effects Volume	12-4
Sound Volume	12-4
Speaker Volume	12-4
Specifications	24-18
Speed Calling	
SSL/TLS	18-2
Storage Capacity	
Sub Menu View	
Switch Callers	16-6
Switch Unread/Read	17-10

ıze	17-21	
ype	17-22	
Unit	17-21	•
ure		•
ys	xvi	
Effects		
Effects Volume	12-4	
Volume	12-4	
r Volume	12-4	
cations	24-18	
Calling	4-11	
5	18-2	
e Capacity	24-17	
nu View	12-11	
Callers	16-6	
Unread/Read	17-19	•

Ī	
Tasks	14-19
Add	14-19
Alarm	14-19
Delete	14-22
Open	14-21
Tasks Lock	14-22
Text Browse	18-12
<b>Text Conversion Functions</b>	3-9
Conversion Prediction	3-10

Phrase Prediction	3-1
User Dictionary	3-1
Word Predictions	
Text Copy	
Text Copy	.17-13, 10-0
Text Entry	3-
Input Mode Icons	
Text Entry Modes	3- <sup>-</sup>
lcons	
Key Assignment	
Switch	
Time Table	
Сору	
Delete	
Register	
Starting/Ending Time Setting	
Touch Tones	
Troubleshooting	24-1

U	
Unsent Message Box	17-11
Unsent Messages	17-17
Display	17-11
Edit/Send	17-17
Update Software	24-13
USB	11-12
Cancel Data Transfer Mode	11-14
Charging	11-14
Dial-up Connections	11-14

Set Data Transfer Mode	11-13
Transfer Data	11-14
Jse Files	18-10
File Property	18-10
Play	18-11
Save	18-10
User Dictionary	3-11
Edit	3-11
Save	3-11
USIM Card	1-1
Insert/Remove	1-2

V	
/ibration	12-4
/ideo Calls	5-1
Auto Answer	5-4
Caller Details	12-7
Hold Image	5-6
Image Quality	
Incoming Call Image	12-6
Loud Speaker	
Mute	
Picture View	12-7
Self-view	5-4
Send Picture	5-4
Speaker	
Speaker Volume	5-2
Switch Display	

Zoom	5-3
Voice Recorder	14-24
During a call	2-5
Play	14-25
Record	14-24
Select Storage	14-25
Voice Mail	
W	
Wallpaper	12-5
Warranty	
Weather Indicator	
Check	
Update	22-3
View Settings	
World Clock	14-26
Daylight Saving Time	14-26
Display	
GMT Offset	
Setting	14-26
Switch Main City	
Υ	
Yahoo! Keitai	18-1

## **Warranty & After Sales Service**

### Warranty

A warranty card is included with the handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

### Note

 SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

### **After Sales Service**

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 24-11) before submitting your handset for repair. If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

- Repair within warranty period
  - Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after warranty period
  - Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.
- During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.

#### Note

- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair
  of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup
  copy of important data such as Phone Book data. SoftBank and Toshiba
  assume no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration
  of handset data (contents of Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) and settings
  as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying the handset is in violation of Radio Law.
   Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

### Tip

 If you have any inquiries with regards to the after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 24-33).

## **Customer Service**

If you have any questions about a SoftBank handset or service, please call General Information. For service or handset repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

### **SoftBank Customer Centers**

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial

+81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial the correct number.

International charges will apply to this call.)

### Call These Numbers Toll Free from Fixed-Line Phones

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	<b>(</b> a) 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>(</b> a) 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	<b>(</b> a) 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>6</b> 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	<b>©</b> 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>6</b> 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	<b>(</b> a) 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>6</b> 0088-250-113

## SoftBank 911T Instruction Manual

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

\* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 911T

Manufacturer: TOSHIBA CORPORATION



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

<sup>\*</sup> Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.

<sup>\*</sup> Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.